
KIWI Documentation

Release 9.16.27

Marcus Schäfer

Oct 19, 2018

Contents

1	Overview	2
2	Installation	21
3	Quick Start	23
4	Building Images	25
5	KIWI Commands	62
6	Development and Contributing	75
7	Appliance ?	232
8	Contact	233
	Python Module Index	234
	Index	236

Welcome to the documentation for KIWI 9.16.27- the command line utility to build linux system appliances.

Links

- [GitHub Sources](#)
- [GitHub Releases](#)
- [RPM Packages](#)
- [Build Tests\(x86\)](#)
- [Build Tests\(arm\)](#)
- [Build Tests\(s390\)](#)

CHAPTER 1

Overview

Hint: Abstract

This document provides a conceptual overview about the steps of creating an image with KIWI. It also explains the terminology regarding the concept and process when building system images with KIWI 9.16.27.

1.1 Legacy KIWI vs. Next Generation

Hint: Abstract

Users currently have the choice for the kiwi legacy version or this next generation kiwi. This document describes the maintenance state of the legacy kiwi version and under which circumstances the use of the legacy kiwi version is required.

There is still the former **KIWI** version and we decided to rewrite it.

The reasons to rewrite software from scratch could be very different and should be explained in order to let users understand why it makes sense. We are receiving feedback and defect reports from a variety of groups with different use cases and requirements. It became more and more difficult to handle those requests in good quality and without regressions. At some point we asked ourselves:

Is KIWI really well prepared for future challenges?

The conclusion was that the former version has some major weaknesses which has to be addressed prior to continue with future development. The following issues are most relevant:

- Not based on a modern programming language
- Major design flaws but hardly any unit tests. The risk for regressions on refactoring is high
- No arch specific build integration tests
- Lots of legacy code for old distributions

In order to address all of these the questions came up:

```
How to modernize the project without producing
regressions?
```

```
How to change/drop features without making anybody
unhappy?
```

As there is no good way to achieve this in the former code base the decision was made to start a rewrite of KIWI with a maintained and stable version in the background.

Users will be able to use both versions in parallel. In addition, the next generation KIWI will be fully compatible with the current format of the appliance description. This means, users can build an appliance from the same appliance description with the legacy and the next generation KIWI, if the distribution and all configured features are supported by the used KIWI version.

This provides an opportunity for users to test the next generation KIWI with their appliance descriptions without risk. If it builds and works as expected, I recommend to switch to the next generation KIWI. If not, please open an issue on <https://github.com/SUSE/kiwi>.

The legacy KIWI version will be further developed in maintenance mode. There won't be any new features added in that code base though. Packages will be available at the known place: [Legacy KIWI packages](#)

1.1.1 When Do I need to use the legacy kiwi

- If you are building images using one of the features of the dropped features list below.
- If you are building images for an older distribution compared to the list on the main page, see *Supported Distributions*.

1.1.2 Dropped Features

The following features have been dropped. If you make use of them consider to use the legacy KIWI version.

Split systems The legacy KIWI version supports building of split systems which uses a static definition of files and directories marked as read-only or read-write. Evolving technologies like overlayfs makes this feature obsolete.

ZFS filesystem The successor for ZFS is Btrfs in the opensource world. All major distributions put on Btrfs. This and the proprietary attitude of ZFS obsoletes the feature.

Reiserfs filesystem The number of people using this filesystem is decreasing. For image building reiserfs was an interesting filesystem however with Btrfs and XFS there are good non inode based alternatives out there. Therefore we don't continue supporting Reiserfs.

Btrfs seed based live systems A Btrfs seed device is an alternative for other copy on write filesystems like overlayfs. Unfortunately the stability of the seed device when used as cow part in a live system was not as good as we provide with overlayfs and clicfs. Therefore this variant is no longer supported. We might think of adding this feature back if people demand it.

lxc container format lxc has a successor in docker based on the former lxc technology. Many distributions also dropped the lxc tools from the distribution in favour of docker.

OEM Recovery/Restore Recovery/Restore in the world of images has been moved from the operating system layer into higher layers. For example, in private and public Cloud environments disk and image recovery as well as backup strategies are part of Cloud services. Pure operating system recovery and snapshots for consumer machines are provided as features of the distribution. SUSE as an example provides this via Rear (Relax-and-Recover) and snapshot based filesystems (btrfs+snapper). Therefore the recovery feature offered in the legacy KIWI version will not be continued.

Partition based install method in OEM install image The section *Deployment Methods* describes the supported OEM installation procedures. The legacy KIWI version also provided a method to install an image based on the partitions of the OEM disk image. Instead of selecting one target disk to dump the entire image file to, the user selects target partitions. Target partitions could be located on several disks. Each partition of the OEM disk image must be mapped on a selectable target partition. It turned out, users needed a lot of experience in a very sensitive area of the operating system. This is contrary to the idea of images to be dumped and be happy. Thus the partition based install method will not be continued.

1.1.3 Compatibility

The legacy KIWI version can be installed and used together with the next generation KIWI.

Note: Automatic Link Creation for **kiwi** Command

Note the python3-kiwi package uses the alternatives mechanism to setup a symbolic link named **kiwi** to the real executable named **kiwi-ng**. If the link target `/usr/bin/kiwi` already exists on your system, the alternative setup will skip the creation of the link target because it already exists.

From an appliance description perspective, both KIWI versions are fully compatible. Users can build their appliances with both versions and the same appliance description. If the appliance description uses features the next generation KIWI does not provide, the build will fail with an exception early. If the appliance description uses next generation features like the selection of the initrd system, it's not possible to build that with the legacy KIWI, unless the appliance description properly encapsulates the differences into a profile.

The next generation KIWI also provides the `--compat` option and the **kiwicompat** tool to be able to use the same commandline as provided with the legacy KIWI version.

1.2 Basic Workflow

Hint: Abstract

Installation of a Linux system generally occurs by booting the target system from an installation source such as an installation CD/DVD, a live CD/DVD, or a network boot environment (PXE). The installation process is often driven by an installer that interacts with the user to collect information about the installation. This information generally includes the *software to be installed*, the *timezone*, system *user* data, and other information. Once all the information is collected, the installer installs the software onto the target system using packages from the software sources (repositories) available. After the installation is complete the system usually reboots and enters a configuration procedure upon start-up. The configuration may be fully automatic or it may include user interaction. This description applies for version 9.16.27.

A system image (usually called “image”), is a *complete installation* of a Linux system within a file. The image represents an operational system and, optionally, contains the “final” configuration.

The behavior of the image upon deployment varies depending on the image type and the image configuration since KIWI allows you to completely customize the initial start-up behavior of the image. Among others, this includes images that:

- can be deployed inside an existing virtual environment without requiring configuration at start-up.
- automatically configure themselves in a known target environment.
- prompt the user for an interactive system configuration.

The image creation process with KIWI is automated and does not require any user interaction. The information required for the image creation process is provided by the primary configuration file named `config.xml`. This file is validated against the schema documented in [Schema Documentation](#) section. In addition, the image can optionally be customized using the `config.sh` and `images.sh` scripts and by using an *overlay tree (directory)* called `root`. See [Components of an Image Description](#) section for further details.

Note: Previous Knowledge

This documentation assumes that you are familiar with the general concepts of Linux, including the boot process, and distribution concepts such as package management.

1.2.1 Building Images

KIWI creates images in a two step process. The first step, the `prepare` operation, generates a so-called *unpacked image* tree (directory) using the information provided in the `config.xml` configuration file. The `config.xml` file is part of the *configuration directory (tree)* that describes the image to be created by KIWI.

The second step, the `create` operation, creates the *packed image* or *image* in the specified format based on the unpacked image and the information provided in the `config.xml` configuration file.

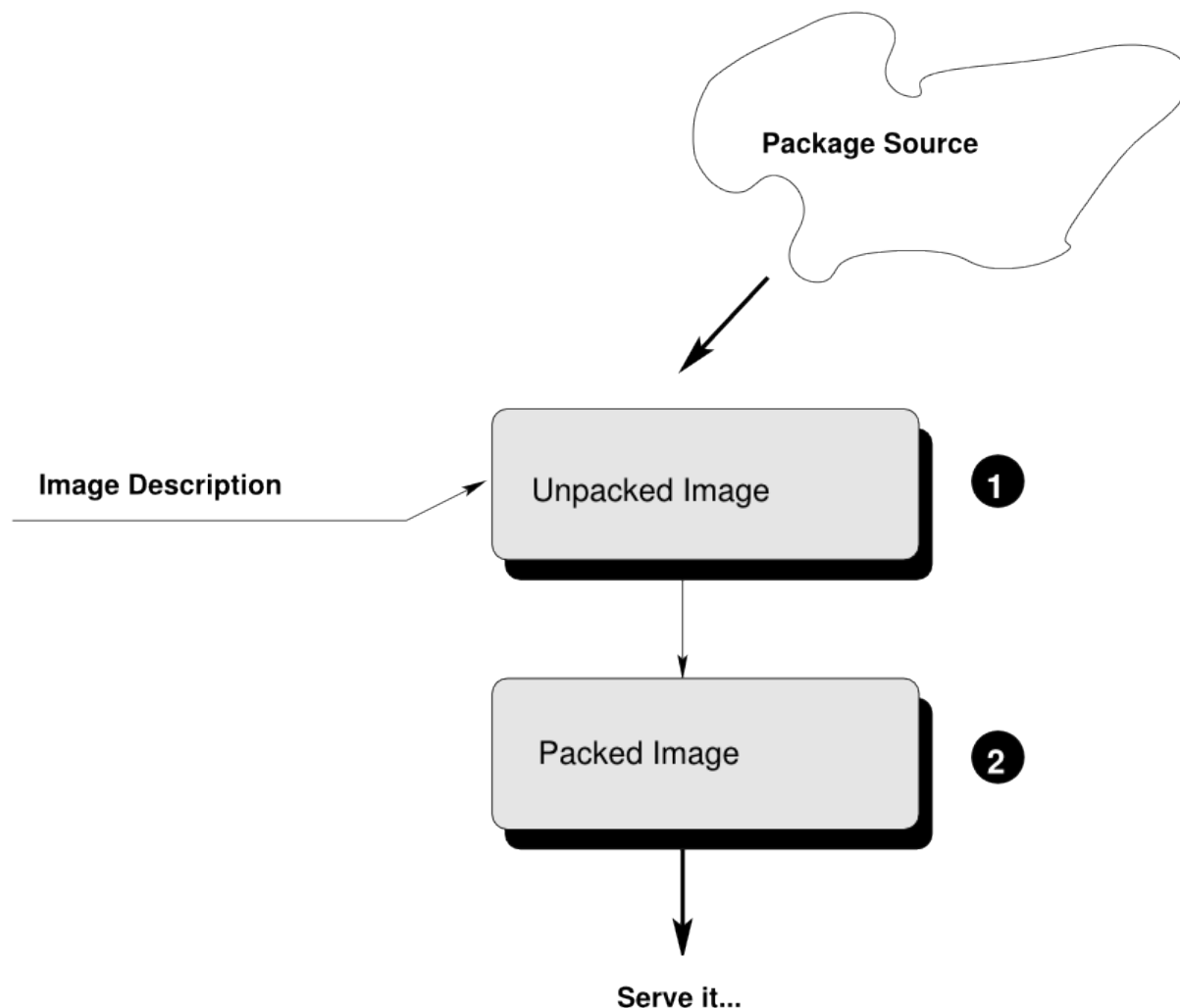


Fig. 1: Image Creation Architecture

- (1) Unpacked Image Encapsulated system reachable via chroot
- (2) Packed Image Encapsulated system reachable via kernel file system/extension drivers such as loopback mounts, etc.

Note: KIWI configuration file name convention

KIWI at first place looks for a configuration file named `config.xml`. If there is no such file,

KIWI looks for files with a `*.kiwi` extension. In that case, the first match is the loaded file.

The Prepare Step

The creation of an image with KIWI is a two step process. The first step is called the `prepare` step and it must complete successfully before the second step, the `create` step can be executed.

During the prepare step, KIWI creates an *unpacked image*, also called “root tree”. The new root tree is created in a directory specified on the command line with the option `--root` argument or the value of the `defaultroot` element in the `config.xml` file. This directory will be the installation target for software packages to be installed during the image creation process.

For package installation, KIWI relies on the package manager specified with the `packagemanager` element in the `config.xml` file. KIWI supports the following package managers: `dnf`, `zypper` (default), `yum` and `apt/dpkg`.

The prepare step consists of the following substeps:

1. **Create Target Root Directory.**

KIWI will exit with an error if the target root tree already exists to avoid accidental deletion of an existing unpacked image.

2. **Install Packages.**

Initially, KIWI configures the package manager to use the repositories specified in the configuration file and/or the command line. Following the repository setup, the packages specified in the `bootstrap` section of the configuration file are installed in a temporary workspace external to the target root tree. This establishes the initial environment to support the completion of the process in chroot setting. The essential packages to specify as part of the bootstrap environment are the `filesystem` and `glibc-locale` packages. The dependency chain of these two packages is sufficient to populate the bootstrap environment with all required software to support the installation of packages into the new root tree.

The installation of software packages through the selected package manager may install unwanted packages. Removing such packages can be accomplished by marking them for deletion in the configuration file. To do so specify a configuration entry like:

```
<package type="delete">package_to_be_deleted</package>
```

3. **Apply the Overlay Tree.**

After the package installation is complete, KIWI will apply all files and directories present in the overlay directory named `root` to the target root tree. Files already present in the target root directory will be overwritten, others will be added. This allows you to overwrite any file that was installed by one of the packages during the installation phase.

4. **Apply Archives.**

Any archive specified with the `archive` element in the `config.xml` file is applied in the specified order (top to bottom) after the overlay tree copy operation is complete. Files and directories will be extracted relative to the top level of the new root tree. As with the overlay tree, it is possible to overwrite files already existing in the target root tree.

5. Execute the User-defined Scripts `config.sh`.

At the end of the preparation stage the script named `config.sh` is executed if present. It is executed on the top level of the target root tree. The script's primary function is to complete the system configuration, for example, by activating services. See [Image Customization with `config.sh` Shell Script](#) section for further details.

6. Manage The New Root Tree.

The unpacked image directory is a directory, as far as the build system is concerned you can manipulate the content of this directory according to your needs. Since it represents a system installation you can “chroot” into this directory for testing purposes. The file system contains an additional directory named `/image` that is not present in a regular system. It contains information KIWI requires during the create step, including a copy of the `config.xml` file.

Do not make any changes to the system, since they will get lost when re-running the `prepare` step again. Additionally, you may introduce errors that will occur during the `create` step which are difficult to track. The recommended way to apply changes to the unpacked image directory is to change the configuration and re-run the `prepare` step.

The Create Step

The successful completion of the `prepare` step is a prerequisite for the `create` step. It ensures the unpacked root tree is complete and consistent. Creating the packed, or final, image is done in the `create` step. Multiple images can be created using the same unpacked root tree. It is, for example, possible to create a self installing OEM image and a virtual machine image from a single unpacked root tree. The only prerequisite is that both image types are specified in the `config.xml` before the `prepare` step is executed.

During the `create` step the following major operations are performed by KIWI:

1. Execute the User-defined Script `images.sh`.

At the beginning of the image creation process the script named `images.sh` is executed if present. It is executed on the top level of the target root tree. The script is usually used to remove files that are not needed in the final image. For example, if an appliance is being built for a specific hardware, unnecessary kernel drivers can be removed using this script.

2. Create Requested Image Type.

The image types that can be created from a prepared image tree depend on the types specified in the image description `config.xml` file. The configuration file must contain at least one `type` element. see: [Building Images](#)

1.2.2 Components of an Image Description

A KIWI image description can be composed by several parts. The main part is the KIWI description file itself (named `config.xml` or an arbitrary name plus the `*.kiwi` extension). The configuration XML is the only required component, others are optional.

These are the optional components of an image description:

1. `config.sh` shell script

Is the configuration shell script that runs at the end of the *prepare step* if present. It can be used to fine tune the unpacked image.

2. `images.sh` shell script

Is the configuration shell script that runs at the beginning of the create step. So it is expected to be used to handle image type specific tasks.

3. Overlay tree directory

The *overlay tree* is a folder (called `root`) or a tarball file (called `root.tar.gz`) that contains files and directories that will be copied to the target image build tree during the *prepare step*. It is executed after all the packages included in the `config.xml` file have been installed. Any already present file is overwritten.

4. CD root user data

For live ISO images and install ISO images an optional `cdroot` archive is supported. This is a tar archive matching the name `config-cdroot.tar[.compression_postfix]`. If present it will be unpacked as user data on the ISO image. This is mostly useful to add e.g. license files or user documentation on the CD/DVD which can be read directly without booting from the media.

5. Archives included in the `config.xml` file.

The archives that are included in the `<packages>` using the `<archive>` subsection:

```
<packages type="image">
  <archive name="custom-archive.tgz"/>
</packages>
```

Image Customization with `config.sh` Shell Script

The KIWI image description allows to have an optional `config.sh` bash script in place. It can be used for changes appropriate for all images to be created from a given unpacked image (since `config.sh` runs prior to create step). Basically the script should be designed to take over control of adding the image operating system configuration. Configuration in that sense means all tasks which runs once in an OS installation process like activating services, creating configuration files, prepare an environment for a firstboot workflow, etc. The `config.sh` script is called at the end of the *prepare step* (after users have been set and the *overlay tree directory* has been applied). If `config.sh` exits with an exit code `!= 0` the kiwi process will exit with an error too.

See below a common template for `config.sh` script:

```
#=====
# Functions...
#-----
test -f /.kconfig && . /.kconfig
test -f /.profile && . /.profile

#=====
# Greeting...
#-----
echo "Configure image: [$kiwi_iname]..."

#=====
# Mount system filesystems
#-----
baseMount

#=====
# Call configuration code/functions
#-----
...

#=====
# Umount kernel filesystems
#-----
baseCleanMount

#=====
# Exit safely
#-----
exit 0
```

Common Functions

The `.kconfig` file allows to make use of a common set of functions. Functions specific to SUSE Linux specific begin with the name `suse`. Functions applicable to all linux systems starts with the name `base`. The following list describes the functions available inside the `config.sh` script.

baseCleanMount Umount the system filesystems `/proc`, `/dev/pts`, and `/sys`.

baseDisableCtrlAltDel Disable the Ctrl-Alt-Del key sequence setting in `/etc/inittab`.

baseGetPackagesForDeletion Return the name(s) of packages which will be deleted.

baseGetProfilesUsed Return the name(s) of profiles used to build this image.

baseSetRunlevel {value} Set the default run level.

baseSetupBoot Set up the `linuxrc` as `init`.

baseSetupBusyBox {-f} Activates busybox if installed for all links from the `busybox/busybox.links` file—you can choose custom apps to be forced into busybox with the `-f` option as first parameter, for example:

```
baseSetupBusyBox -f /bin/zcat /bin/vi
```

baseSetupInPlaceGITRepository Create an in place git repository of the root directory. This process may take some time and you may expect problems with binary data handling.

baseSetupInPlaceSVNRepository {path_list} Create an in place subversion repository for the specified directories. A standard call could look like this `baseSetupInPlaceSVNRepository /etc, /srv, and /var/log`.

baseSetupPlainTextGITRepository Create an in place git repository of the root directory containing all plain/text files.

baseSetupUserPermissions Search all home directories of all users listed in `/etc/passwd` and change the ownership of all files to belong to the correct user and group.

baseStripAndKeep {list of info-files to keep} Helper function for `strip*` functions read stdin lines of files to check for removing params: files which should be keep.

baseStripDocs {list of docu names to keep} Remove all documentation, except one given as parameter.

baseStripInfos {list of info-files to keep} Remove all info files, except one given as parameter.

baseStripLocales {list of locales} Remove all locales, except one given as parameter.

baseStripMans {list of manpages to keep} Remove all manual pages, except one given as parameter example:

```
baseStripMans more less
```

baseStripRPM Remove rpms defined in `config.xml` in the `image type=delete` section.

suseRemovePackagesMarkedForDeletion Remove rpms defined in `config.xml` in the `image type=delete` section. The difference compared to `baseStripRPM` is that the suse variant checks if the package is really installed prior to passing it to rpm to uninstall it. The suse rpm exits with an error exit code while there are other rpm version which just ignore if an uninstall request was set on a package which is not installed.

baseStripTools {list of toolpath} {list of tools} Helper function for `suseStripInitrd` function params: `toolpath`, `tools`.

baseStripUnusedLibs Remove libraries which are not directly linked against applications in the `bin` directories.

baseUpdateSysConfig {filename} {variable} {value} Update `sysconfig` variable contents.

Debug {message} Helper function to print a message if the variable `DEBUG` is set to 1.

Echo {echo commandline} Helper function to print a message to the controlling terminal.

Rm {list of files} Helper function to delete files and announce it to log.

Rpm {rpm commandline} Helper function to the RPM function and announce it to log.

suseConfig Setup keytable language, timezone and hwclock if specified in `config.xml` and call `SuSEconfig` afterwards `SuSEconfig` is only called on systems which still support it.

suseInsertService {servicename} This function calls `baseInsertService` and exists only for compatibility reasons.

suseRemoveService {servicename} This function calls `baseRemoveService` and exists only for compatibility reasons.

baseInsertService {servicename} Activate the given service by using the `chkconfig` or `systemctl` program. Which init system is in use is auto detected.

baseRemoveService {servicename} Deactivate the given service by using the `chkconfig` or `systemctl` program. Which init system is in use is auto detected.

baseService {servicename} {on|off} Activate/Deactivate a service by using the `chkconfig` or `systemctl` program. The function requires the service name and the value on or off as parameters. Which init system is in use is auto detected.

suseActivateDefaultServices Activates the following `sysVInit` services to be on by default using the `chkconfig` program: `boot.rootfsck`, `boot.cleanup`, `boot.localfs`, `boot.localnet`, `boot.clock`, `policykitd`, `dbus`, `consolekit`, `haldaemon`, `network`, `atd`, `syslog`, `cron`, `kbd`. And the following for `systemd` systems: `network`, `cron`.

suseSetupProduct This function creates the `baseproduct` link in `/etc/products.d` pointing to the installed product.

suseSetupProductInformation This function will use `zypper` to search for the installed product and install all product specific packages. This function only makes sense if `zypper` is used as package manager.

suseStripPackager {-a} Remove smart or `zypper` packages and db files Also remove rpm package and db if -a given.

Profile Environment Variables

The `.profile` environment file contains a specific set of variables which are listed below. Some of the functions above use the variables.

\$kiwi_compressed The value of the compressed attribute set in the type element in `config.xml`.

\$kiwi_delete A list of all packages which are part of the packages section with `type="delete"` in `config.xml`.

\$kiwi_drivers A comma separated list of the driver entries as listed in the drivers section of the `config.xml`.

\$kiwi_iname The name of the image as listed in `config.xml`.

\$kiwi_iversion The image version string major.minor.release.

\$kiwi_keytable The contents of the keytable setup as done in `config.xml`.

\$kiwi_language The contents of the locale setup as done in `config.xml`.

\$kiwi_profiles A list of profiles used to build this image.

\$kiwi_size The predefined size value for this image. This is not the computed size but only the optional size value of the preferences section in `config.xml`.

\$kiwi_timezone The contents of the timezone setup as done in `config.xml`.

\$kiwi_type The basic image type.

Configuration Tips

In this section some ideas of how `config.sh` file could be used to fine tune the resulting unpacked image are quickly described:

1. Stateless systemd UUIDs:

During the image packages installation when *systemd* and/or *dbus* are installed machine ID files are created and set (`/etc/machine-id`, `/var/lib/dbus/machine-id`). Those UUIDs are meant to be unique and set only once in each deployment. KIWI follows the [systemd recommendations](#) and whipes any `/etc/machine-id` content, leaving it as an empty file. Note this is only applied for images based on dracut initrd, on container images, for instance, this setting is not applied.

In case this setting is required also for a non dracut based image this could be also achieved by clearing `/etc/machine-id` in `config.sh`.

Note: Avoid interactive boot

It is important to remark that the file `/etc/machine-id` is set to an empty file instead of deleting it. Systemd may trigger **systemd-firstboot** service if this file is not present, which leads to an interactive firstboot where the user is asked to provide some data.

Note: Avoid inconsistent `var/lib/dbus/machine-id`

It is important to remark that `/etc/machine-id` and `/var/lib/dbus/machine-id` should contain the same unique ID. In modern systems `/var/lib/dbus/machine-id` is already a symlink to `/etc/machine-id`. However in older systems those might be two different files. This is the case for SLE-12

based images, so in those cases it is recommended to add into the `config.sh` the symlink creation:

```
#=====
# Make machine-id consistent with dbus
#-----
if [ -e /var/lib/dbus/machine-id ]; then
    rm /var/lib/dbus/machine-id
fi
ln -s /etc/machine-id /var/lib/dbus/machine-id
```

Image Customization with `images.sh` Shell Script

The KIWI image description allows to have an optional `images.sh` bash script in place. It can be used for changes appropriate for certain images/image types on case-by-case basis (since it runs at beginning of *create step*). Basically the script should be designed to take over control of handling image type specific tasks. For example if building the oem type requires some additional package or config it can be handled in `images.sh`. Please keep in mind there is only one unpacked root tree the script operates in. This means all changes are permanent and will not be automatically restored. It is also the script authors tasks to check if changes done before do not interfere in a negative way if another image type is created from the same unpacked image root tree. If `images.sh` exits with an exit code `!= 0` the kiwi process will exit with an error too.

See below a common template for `images.sh` script:

```
#=====
# Functions...
#-----
test -f /.kconfig && . /.kconfig
test -f /.profile && . /.profile

#=====
# Greeting...
#-----
echo "Configure image: [$kiwi_iname]..."

#=====
# Call configuration code/functions
#-----
...

#=====
# Exit safely
#-----
exit
```


Common Functions

The `.kconfig` file allows to make use of a common set of functions. Functions specific to SUSE Linux specific begin with the name *suse*. Functions applicable to all linux systems starts with the name *base*. The following list describes the functions available inside the `images.sh` script.

baseCleanMount Umount the system file systems `/proc`, `/dev/pts`, and `/sys`.

baseGetProfilesUsed Return the name(s) of profiles used to build this image.

baseGetPackagesForDeletion Return the list of packages setup in the `packages type="delete"` section of the `config.xml` used to build this image.

suseGFXBoot {theme} {loadertype} This function requires the `gfxboot` and at least one *bootsplash-theme-** package to be installed to work correctly. The function creates from this package data a graphics boot screen for the `isolinux` and `grub` boot loaders. Additionally it creates the `bootsplash` files for the resolutions 800x600, 1024x768, and 1280x1024.

suseStripKernel This function removes all kernel drivers which are not listed in the `drivers` sections of the `config.xml` file.

suseStripInitrd This function removes a whole bunch of tools binaries and libraries which are not required to boot a *suse* system with KIWI.

Rm {list of files} Helper function to delete files and announce it to log.

Rpm {rpm commandline} Helper function to the `rpm` function and announce it to log.

Echo {echo commandline} Helper function to print a message to the controlling terminal.

Debug {message} Helper function to print a message if the variable *DEBUG* is set to 1.

Profile environment variables

The `.profile` environment file contains a specific set of variables which are listed below. Some of the functions above use the variables.

\$kiwi_iname The name of the image as listed in `config.xml`.

\$kiwi_iversioin The image version string `major.minor.release`.

\$kiwi_keytable The contents of the `keytable` setup as done in `config.xml`.

\$kiwi_language The contents of the `locale` setup as done in `config.xml`.

\$kiwi_timezone The contents of the `timezone` setup as done in `config.xml`.

\$kiwi_delete A list of all packages which are part of the `packages` section with `type="delete"` in `config.xml`.

\$kiwi_profiles A list of profiles used to build this image.

\$kiwi_drivers A comma separated list of the driver entries as listed in the drivers section of the `config.xml`.

\$kiwi_size The predefined size value for this image. This is not the computed size but only the optional size value of the preferences section in `config.xml`.

\$kiwi_compressed The value of the compressed attribute set in the type element in `config.xml`.

\$kiwi_type The basic image type.

1.2.3 Customizing the Boot Process

Most Linux systems use a special boot image to control the system boot process after the system firmware, BIOS or UEFI, hands control of the hardware to the operating system. This boot image is called the `initrd`. The Linux kernel loads the `initrd`, a compressed `cpio` initial RAM disk, into the RAM and executes `init` or, if present, `linuxrc`.

Depending on the image type, KIWI creates the boot image automatically during the `create` step. It uses a tool called `dracut` to create this `initrd`. `dracut` generated `initrd` archives can be extended by custom modules to create functionality which is not natively provided by `dracut` itself. In the scope of KIWI the following `dracut` modules are used:

kiwi-dump The `dracut` module which serves as an image installer. It provides the required implementation to install a KIWI image on a selectable target. This module is required if one of the attributes `installiso`, `installstick` or `installpxe` is set to `true` in the image type definition

kiwi-live The `dracut` module which boots up a KIWI live image. This module is required if the `iso` image type is selected

kiwi-overlay The `dracut` module which allows to boot disk images configured with the attribute `overlayroot` set to `true`. Such a disk has its root partition compressed and readonly and boots up using `overlayfs` for the root filesystem using an extra partition on the same disk for persistent data.

kiwi-repart The `dracut` module which resizes an oem disk image after installation onto the target disk to meet the size constraints configured in the `oemconfig` section of the image description. The module takes over the tasks to repartition the disk, resizing of `raid`, `lvm`, `luks` and other layers and resizing of the system filesystems.

kiwi-lib The `dracut` module which provides functions of general use and serves as a library usable by other `dracut` modules. As the name says its main purpose is to function as library for the above mentioned `kiwi` `dracut` modules.

Note: Custom Boot Image Support

Apart from the standard `dracut` based creation of the boot image, KIWI supports the use of custom boot images for the image types `oem` and `pxe`. The use of a custom boot image is activated by setting the following attribute in the image description:

```
<type ... initrd_system="kiwi"/>
```

Along with this setting it is now mandatory to provide a reference to a boot image description in the `boot` attribute like in the following example:

```
<type ... boot="netboot/suse-leap42.3"/>
```

Such boot descriptions for the `oem` and `pxe` types are currently still provided by the KIWI packages but will be moved into its own repository and package soon.

The custom boot image descriptions allows a user to completely customize what and how the `initrd` behaves by its own implementation. This concept is mostly used in PXE environments which are usually highly customized and requires a specific boot and deployment workflow.

Boot Image Hook-Scripts

The `dracut` `initrd` system uses `systemd` to implement a predefined workflow of services which are documented in the `bootup` document at:

<http://man7.org/linux/man-pages/man7/dracut.bootup.7.html>

To hook in a custom boot script into this workflow it's required to provide a `dracut` module which is picked up by `dracut` at the time KIWI calls it. The module files can be either provided as a package or as part of the `overlay` directory in your image description

The following example demonstrates how to include a custom hook script right before the system `rootfs` gets mounted.

1. Create a subdirectory for the `dracut` module

```
$ mkdir -p root/usr/lib/dracut/modules.d/90my-module
```

2. Register the `dracut` module in a configuration file

```
$ vi root/etc/dracut.conf.d/90-my-module.conf

add_dracutmodules+=" my-module "
```

3. Create the hook script

```
$ touch root/usr/lib/dracut/modules.d/90my-module/my-script.sh
```

4. Create a module setup file

```
$ vi root/usr/lib/dracut/modules.d/90my-module/module-setup.sh

#!/bin/bash

# called by dracut
check() {
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
# check module integrity
}

# called by dracut
depends() {
    # return list of modules depending on this one
}

# called by dracut
installkernel() {
    # load required kernel modules when needed
    instmods _kernel_module_list_
}

# called by dracut
install() {
    declare moddir=${moddir}
    inst_multiple _tools_my_module_script_needs_

    inst_hook pre-mount 30 "${moddir}/my-script.sh"
}
```

That's it. At the time KIWI calls dracut the 90my-module will be taken into account and is installed into the generated initrd. At boot time systemd calls the scripts as part of the dracut-pre-mount.service

The dracut system offers a lot more possibilities to customize the initrd than shown in the example above. For more information visit the dracut project page at

<http://people.redhat.com/harald/dracut.html>

Boot Image Parameters

A dracut generated initrd in a KIWI image build process includes one ore more of the KIWI provided dracut modules. The following list documents the available kernel boot parameters for this modules:

rd.kiwi.debug This variable activates the debug log file for the kiwi part of the boot process at `/run/initramfs/log/boot.kiwi`

rd.kiwi.install.pxe This variable tells an oem installation image to lookup the system image on a remote location specified in `rd.kiwi.install.image`

rd.kiwi.install.image=URI This variable specifies the remote location of the system image in a pxe based oem installation

rd.live.overlay.persistent This variable tells a live iso image to prepare a persistent write partition.

rd.live.overlay.cowfs This variable tells a live iso image which filesystem should be used to store data on the persistent write partition.

rd.live.dir This variable tells a live iso image the directory which contains the live OS root directory. Defaults to `LiveOS`

rd.live.squashimg This variable tells a live iso image the name of the squashfs image file which holds the OS root. Defaults to `squashfs.img`

Boot Debugging

If the boot process encounters a fatal error, the default behavior is to stop the boot process without any possibility to interact with the system. Prevent this behavior by activating dracut's builtin debug mode in combination with the kiwi debug mode as follows:

```
rd.debug rd.kiwi.debug
```

This should be set at the Kernel command line. With those parameters activated, the system will enter a limited shell environment in case of a fatal error during boot. The shell contains a basic set of commands and allows for a closer look to:

```
less /run/initramfs/log/boot.kiwi
```

1.3 Conceptual Overview

A system image (usually called “image”), is a *complete installation* of a Linux system within a file. The image represents an operation system and, optionally, contains the “final” configuration.

KIWI creates images in a two step process:

1. The first step, the *prepare operation*, generates a so-called *unpacked image tree* (directory) using the information provided in the image description.
2. The second step, the *create operation*, creates the *packed image* or *image* in the specified format based on the unpacked image and the information provided in the configuration file.

The image creation process with KIWI is automated and does not require any user interaction. The information required for the image creation process is provided by the image description.

1.4 Terminology

Appliance An appliance is a ready to use image of an operating system including a preconfigured application for a specific use case. The appliance is provided as an image file and needs to be deployed to, or activated in the target system or service.

Image The result of a KIWI build process.

Image Description Specification to define an appliance. The image description is a collection of human readable files in a directory. At least one XML file `config.xml` or `.kiwi` is required. In addition there may be as well other files like scripts or configuration data. These can be used to customize certain parts either of the KIWI build process or of the initial start-up behavior of the image.

Overlay Files A directory structure with files and subdirectories stored as part of the Image Description. This directory structure is packaged as a file `root.tar.gz` or stored below a directory named `root`. The content of the directory structure is copied over the existing file system (overlayed) of the appliance root. This includes permissions and attributes as a supplement.

KIWI An OS appliance builder.

Virtualization Technology Software simulated computer hardware. A virtual machine acts like a real computer, but is separated from the physical hardware. Within this documentation the Qemu virtualization system is used.

1.5 System Requirements

To use and run KIWI, you need:

- A recent Linux distribution, see [Supported Distributions](#) for details. Alternatively a Linux distribution which supports the docker container system as it would be required when running KIWI in a container, see: [Building in a Self-Contained Environment](#)
- Enough free disk space to build and store the image. We recommend a minimum of 10GB.
- Python version 2.7, 3.4 or higher; as KIWI supports both Python versions, the information in this guide applies also to both packages, be it `python3-kiwi` or `python2-kiwi`.
- Git (package `git-core`) to clone a repository.
- Virtualization technology to start the image. We recommend QEMU

CHAPTER 2

Installation

Hint: This document describes how to install KIWI. Apart from the preferred method to install KIWI via rpm, it is also provided on pypi and can be installed via pip.

KIWI can be installed with different methods. For this guide, only the installation as a packages through a package manager is described.

Packages for the new KIWI version are provided at the [openSUSE buildservice](#).

To install KIWI, do:

1. Open the URL <http://download.opensuse.org/repositories/Virtualization:/Appliances:/Builder> in your browser.
2. Right-click on the link of your preferred operating system and copy the URL. In Firefox it is the menu *Copy link address*.
3. Insert the copied URL from the last step in your shell. The `DIST` placeholder contains the respective distribution. Use **zypper addrepo** to add it to your list of repositories:

```
$ sudo zypper addrepo http://download.opensuse.org/repositories/  
→Virtualization:/Appliances:/Builder/<DIST> appliance-builder
```

4. Install KIWI:

Note: Multipython packages

This version of KIWI is provided for python 2 and python 3 versions. The following information is based on the installation of the python3-kiwi package

```
$ sudo zypper in python3-kiwi
```

2.1 Example Appliance Descriptions

For use with the next generation KIWI there is also a GitHub project hosting example appliance descriptions. Users who need an example to start with should checkout the project as follows:

```
$ git clone https://github.com/SUSE/kiwi-descriptions
```


CHAPTER 3

Quick Start

Hint: Abstract

This document describes how to start with KIWI, an OS appliance builder. This description applies for version 9.16.27.

3.1 Before you start

Make sure you have installed KIWI and the example collection as explained in [Installation](#)

3.2 Build your first image

Your first image will be a simple system disk image which can run in any full virtualization system like for example QEMU. Call the following KIWI command in order to build it

```
$ sudo kiwi-ng --type vmx system build \  
    --description kiwi-descriptions/suse/x86_64/suse-leap-42.3-JeOS_\  
↪ \  
    --target-dir /tmp/myimage
```

Find the image with the suffix `.raw` below `/tmp/myimage`.

3.3 Run your image

Running an image actually means booting the operating system. In order to do that attach the disk image to a virtual system, in our case QEMU is used, and boot it as follows:

```
$ qemu \  
  -boot c  
  -drive file=LimeJeOS-Leap-42.3.x86_64-1.42.3.raw,format=raw,  
  ↪if=virtio \  
  -m 4096
```

CHAPTER 4

Building Images

Hint: This document provides an overview about the supported KIWI image types. Before building an image with KIWI it's important to understand the different image types and their meaning.

4.1 Build an ISO Hybrid Live Image

Abstract

This page explains how to build a live image. It contains:

- how to build an ISO image
- how to run it with QEMU

A Live ISO image is a system on a removable media, e.g CD/DVD or USB stick. Once built and deployed it boots off from this media without interfering with other system storage components. A useful pocket system for testing and demo and debugging purposes.

The following example shows how to build a live ISO image based on openSUSE Leap:

1. Make sure you have checked out the example image descriptions, see [Example Appliance Descriptions](#).
2. Build the image with KIWI:

```
$ sudo kiwi-ng --type iso system build \  
    --description kiwi-descriptions/suse/x86_64/suse-leap-42.3-  
→JeOS \  
    --target-dir /tmp/myimage
```

Find the image with the suffix `.iso` below `/tmp/myimage`.

3. Test the live image with QEMU:

```
$ qemu -cdrom LimeJeOS-Leap-42.3.x86_64-1.42.3.iso -m 4096
```

After the test was successful, the image is complete and ready to use. See [Deploy ISO Image on an USB Stick](#) and [Deploy ISO Image as File on a FAT32 Formated USB Stick](#) for further information.

4.2 Build a Virtual Disk Image

Abstract

This page explains how to build a simple disk image. It contains:

- how to build a vmx image
- how to run it with QEMU

A simple disk image represents the system disk, useful for cloud frameworks like Amazon EC2, Google Compute Engine or Microsoft Azure.

The following example shows how to build a simple disk image based on openSUSE Leap and ready to run in QEMU:

1. Make sure you have checked out the example image descriptions, see [Example Appliance Descriptions](#).
2. Build the image with KIWI:

```
$ sudo kiwi-ng --type vmx system build \  
    --description kiwi-descriptions/suse/x86_64/suse-leap-42.3-  
→JeOS \  
    --target-dir /tmp/myimage
```

Find the image with the suffix `.raw` below `/tmp/myimage`.

3. Test the live image with QEMU:

```
$ qemu \  
    -drive file=LimeJeOS-Leap-42.3.x86_64-1.42.3.raw,format=raw,  
→if=virtio \  
    -m 4096
```

After the test was successful, the image is complete. For further information how to setup the image to work within a cloud framework see:

- [KIWI Image Description for Amazon EC2](#)
- [KIWI Image Description for Microsoft Azure](#)
- [KIWI Image Description for Google Compute Engine](#)

4.3 Build an OEM Expandable Disk Image

Abstract

This page explains how to build an OEM disk image. It contains:

- how to build an OEM image
- how to deploy an OEM image
- how to run the deployed system

An OEM disk represents the system disk with the capability to auto expand the disk and its filesystem to a custom disk geometry. This allows deploying the same OEM image on target systems of a different hardware setup.

The following example shows how to build and deploy an OEM disk image based on openSUSE Leap using a QEMU virtual machine as OEM target system:

1. Make sure you have checked out the example image descriptions, see [Example Appliance Descriptions](#).
2. Build the image with KIWI:

```
$ sudo kiwi-ng --type oem system build \  
    --description kiwi-descriptions/suse/x86_64/suse-  
↪leap-42.3-JeOS \  
    --target-dir /tmp/myimage
```

Find the following result images below /tmp/myimage.

- The OEM disk image with the suffix `.raw` is an expandable virtual disk. It can expand itself to a custom disk geometry.
- The OEM installation image with the suffix `install.iso` is a hybrid installation system which contains the OEM disk image and is capable to install this image on any target disk.

4.3.1 Deployment Methods

The basic idea behind an OEM image is to provide the virtual disk data for OEM vendors to support easy deployment of the system to physical storage media.

There are the following basic deployment strategies:

1. *Manual Deployment*

Manually deploy the OEM disk image onto the target disk

2. *CD/DVD Deployment*

Boot the OEM installation image and let KIWI's OEM installer deploy the OEM disk image from CD/DVD or USB stick onto the target disk

3. *Network Deployment*

PXE boot the target system and let KIWI's OEM installer deploy the OEM disk image from the network onto the target disk

4.3.2 Manual Deployment

The manual deployment method can be tested using virtualization software such as QEMU, and an additional virtual target disk of a larger size. The following steps shows how to do it:

1. Create a target disk

```
$ qemu-img create target_disk 20g
```

Note: Retaining the Disk Geometry

If the target disk geometry is less or equal to the geometry of the OEM disk image itself, the disk expansion performed for a physical disk install during the OEM boot workflow will be skipped and the original disk geometry stays untouched.

2. Dump OEM image on target disk

```
$ dd if=LimeJeOS-Leap-42.3.x86_64-1.42.3.raw of=target_disk_
→conv=notrunc
```

3. Boot the target disk

```
$ qemu -hda target_disk -m 4096
```

At first boot of the target_disk the system is expanded to the configured storage layout. By default the system root partition and filesystem is resized to the maximum free space available.

4.3.3 CD/DVD Deployment

The deployment from CD/DVD via the installation image can also be tested using virtualization software such as QEMU. The following steps shows how to do it:

1. Create a target disk

Follow the steps above to create a virtual target disk

2. Boot the OEM installation image as CD/DVD with the target disk attached

```
$ qemu -cdrom LimeJeOS-Leap-42.3.x86_64-1.42.3.install.iso -hda ↵
↵target_disk -boot d -m 4096
```

Note: USB Stick Deployment

Like any other iso image built with KIWI, also the OEM installation image is a hybrid image. Thus it can also be used on USB stick and serve as installation stick image like it is explained in *Build an ISO Hybrid Live Image*

4.3.4 Network Deployment

The deployment from the network downloads the OEM disk image from a PXE boot server. This requires a PXE network boot server to be setup as explained in *Setting Up a Network Boot Server*

If the PXE server is running the following steps shows how to test the deployment process over the network using a QEMU virtual machine as target system:

1. Make sure to create an installation PXE TAR archive along with your OEM image by replacing the following setup in `kiwi-descriptions/suse/x86_64/suse-leap-42.3-JeOS/config.xml`

```
instead of

<type image="oem" installiso="true" ...

setup

<type image="oem" installpxe="true" ...
```

2. Rebuild the image, unpack the resulting `LimeJeOS-Leap-42.3.x86_64-1.42.3.install.tar.xz` file to a temporary directory and copy the `initrd` and kernel images to the PXE server:

```
# Unpack installation tarball
mkdir /tmp/pxe && cd /tmp/pxe
tar -xf LimeJeOS-Leap-42.3.x86_64-1.42.3.install.tar.xz
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
# Copy kernel and initrd used for pxe boot
scp pxeboot.initrd.xz PXE_SERVER_IP:/srv/tftpboot/boot/initrd
scp pxeboot.kernel PXE_SERVER_IP:/srv/tftpboot/boot/linux
```

3. Copy the OEM disk image, MD5 file, system kernel and initrd to the PXE boot server:

Activation of the deployed system is done via `kexec` of the kernel and initrd provided here.

```
# Copy system image and MD5 checksum
scp LimeJeOS-Leap-42.3.xz PXE_SERVER_IP:/srv/tftpboot/image/
scp LimeJeOS-Leap-42.3.md5 PXE_SERVER_IP:/srv/tftpboot/image/

# Copy kernel and initrd used for booting the system via kexec
scp LimeJeOS-Leap-42.3.initrd PXE_SERVER_IP:/srv/tftpboot/image/
scp LimeJeOS-Leap-42.3.kernel PXE_SERVER_IP:/srv/tftpboot/image/
```

4. Add/Update the kernel command line parameters

Edit your PXE configuration (for example `pxelinux.cfg/default`) on the PXE server and add these parameters to the append line, typically looking like this:

```
append initrd=boot/initrd rd.kiwi.install.pxe rd.kiwi.install.
→image=tftp://192.168.100.16/image/LimeJeOS-Leap-42.3.xz
```

The location of the image is specified as a source URI which can point to any location supported by the `curl` command. KIWI calls `curl` to fetch the data from this URI. This also means your image, MD5 file, system kernel and initrd could be fetched from any server and doesn't have to be stored on the `PXE_SERVER`.

Note: The initrd and Linux Kernel for pxe boot are always loaded via tftp from the `PXE_SERVER`.

4. Create a target disk

Follow the steps above to create a virtual target disk

5. Connect the client to the network and boot QEMU with the target disk attached to the virtual machine.

```
$ qemu -boot n -hda target_disk -m 4096
```

Note: QEMU bridged networking

In order to let qemu connect to the network we recommend to setup a network bridge on the host system and let qemu connect to it via a custom `/etc/qemu-ifup`. For details see <https://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/QEMU/Networking>

4.4 Build a PXE Root File System Image

Abstract

This page explains how to build a file system image for use with KIWI's PXE boot infrastructure. It contains:

- how to build a PXE file system image
- how to setup the PXE file system image on the PXE server
- how to run it with QEMU

PXE is a network boot protocol that is shipped with most BIOS implementations. The protocol sends a DHCP request to get an IP address. When an IP address is assigned, it uses the TFTP protocol to download a Kernel and boot instructions. Contrary to other images built with KIWI, a PXE image consists of separate boot, kernel and root filesystem images, since those images need to be made available in different locations on the PXE boot server.

A root filesystem image which can be deployed via KIWI's PXE netboot infrastructure represents the system rootfs in a linux filesystem. A user could loop mount the image and access the contents of the root filesystem. The image does not contain any information about the system disk its partitions or the bootloader setup. All of these information is provided by a client configuration file on the PXE server which controls how the root filesystem image should be deployed.

Many different deployment strategies are possible, e.g root over NBD (network block device), AoE (ATA over Ethernet), or NFS for diskless and diskfull clients. This particular example shows how to build an overlayfs-based union system based on openSUSE Leap for a diskless client which receives the squashfs compressed root file system image in a ramdisk overlayed via overlayfs and writes new data into another ramdisk on the same system. As diskless client, a QEMU virtual machine is used.

Things to know before

- To use the image, all image parts need to be copied to the PXE boot server. If you have not set up such a server, refer to *Setting Up a Network Boot Server* for instructions.
 - The following example assumes you will create the PXE image on the PXE boot server itself (if not, use **scp** to copy the files on the remote host).
 - To let QEMU connect to the network, we recommend to setup a network bridge on the host system and let QEMU connect to it via a custom `/etc/qemu-ifup`. For details, see <https://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/QEMU/Networking>
 - The PXE root filesystem image approach is considered to be a legacy setup. The required netboot initrd code will be maintained outside of the KIWI appliance builder code base. If possible, we recommend to switch to the OEM disk image deployment via PXE.
1. Make sure you have checked out the example image descriptions, see *Example Appliance Descriptions*.

2. Build the image with KIWI:

```
$ sudo kiwi-ng --type pxe system build \  
    --description kiwi-descriptions/suse/x86_64/suse-  
↳ leap-42.3-JeOS \  
    --target-dir /tmp/mypxe-result
```

3. Change into the build directory:

```
$ cd /tmp/mypxe-result
```

4. Copy the initrd and the kernel to /srv/tftpboot/boot:

```
$ cp *.initrd.xz /srv/tftpboot/boot/initrd  
$ cp *.kernel /srv/tftpboot/boot/linux
```

5. Copy the system image and its MD5 sum to /srv/tftpboot/image:

```
$ cp LimeJeOS-Leap-42.3.x86_64-1.42.3 /srv/tftpboot/  
↳ image  
$ cp LimeJeOS-Leap-42.3.x86_64-1.42.3.md5 /srv/tftpboot/  
↳ image
```

6. Adjust the PXE configuration file. The configuration file controls which kernel and initrd is loaded and which kernel parameters are set. A template has been installed at /srv/tftpboot/pxelinux.cfg/default from the kiwi-pxeboot package. The minimal configuration required to boot the example image looks like to following:

```
DEFAULT KIWI-Boot  
  
LABEL KIWI-Boot  
    kernel boot/linux  
    append initrd=boot/initrd  
    IPAPPEND 2
```

Additional configuration files can be found at [PXE Client Setup Configuration](#).

7. Create the image client configuration file:

```
$ vi /srv/tftpboot/KIWI/config.default  
  
IMAGE=/dev/ram1;LimeJeOS-Leap-42.3.x86_64;1.42.3;192.  
↳ 168.100.2;4096  
UNIONFS_CONFIG=/dev/ram2,/dev/ram1,overlay
```

All PXE boot based deployment methods are controlled by a client configuration file. The above configuration tells the client where to find the image and how to activate it. In this case the image will be deployed into a ramdisk (ram1) and overlay mounted such that all write operations will land in another ramdisk (ram2). KIWI supports a variety of different deployment strategies based on the rootfs image created beforehand. For details, refer to [PXE Client Setup Configuration](#)

8. Connect the client to the network and boot. This can also be done in a virtualized environment using QEMU as follows:

```
$ qemu -boot n -m 4096
```

4.5 Build a Docker Container Image

Abstract

This page explains how to build a Docker base image. It contains

- basic configuration explanation
- how to build a Docker image
- how to run it with the Docker daemon

KIWI is capable of building native Docker images, from scratch and derived ones. KIWI Docker images are considered to be native since the KIWI tarball image is ready to be loaded to a Docker daemon, including common container configurations.

The Docker configuration metadata is provided to KIWI as part of the *[XML description file](#)* using the `<containerconfig>` tag. The following configuration metadata can be specified:

`containerconfig` attributes:

- `name`: Specifies the repository name of the Docker image.
- `tag`: Sets the tag of the Docker image.
- `maintainer`: Specifies the author field of the container.
- `user`: Sets the user name or user id (UID) to be used when running `entrypoint` and subcommand. Equivalent of the `USER` directive of a Docker file.
- `workingdir`: Sets the working directory to be used when running `cmd` and `entrypoint`. Equivalent of the `WORKDIR` directive of a Docker file.

`containerconfig` child tags:

- `subcommand`: Provides the default execution parameters of the container. Equivalent of the `CMD` directive of a Docker file.
- `labels`: Adds custom metadata to an image using key-value pairs. Equivalent to one or more `LABEL` directives of a Docker file.
- `expose`: Informs at which ports is the container listening at runtime. Equivalent to one or more `EXPOSE` directives of a Docker file.
- `environment`: Sets an environment values using key-value pairs. Equivalent to one or more the `env` directives of a Docker file.

- **entrypoint**: Sets the command that the container will run, it can include parameters. Equivalent of the `ENTRYPOINT` directive of a Docker file.
- **volumes**: Create mountpoints with the given name and mark it to hold external volumes from the host or from other containers. Equivalent to one or more `VOLUME` directives of a Docker file.

Other Docker file directives such as `RUN`, `COPY` or `ADD`, can be mapped to KIWI by using the *config.sh* script file to run bash commands or the *overlay tree* to include extra files.

The following example shows how to build a Docker base image based on openSUSE Leap:

1. Make sure you have checked out the example image descriptions, see [Example Appliance Descriptions](#).
2. Include the `Virtualization/containers` repository to your list:

```
$ zypper addrepo http://download.opensuse.org/repositories/  
→Virtualization:/containers/<DIST> container-tools
```

where the placeholder `<DIST>` is the preferred distribution.

3. Install **umoci** and **skopeo** tools

```
$ zypper in umoci skopeo
```

4. Build the image with KIWI:

```
$ sudo kiwi-ng --type docker system build \  
    --description kiwi-descriptions/suse/x86_64/suse-tumbleweed-  
→docker \  
    --target-dir /tmp/myimage
```

5. Test the Docker image.

First load the new image

```
$ docker load -i openSUSE-Tumbleweed-container-image.x86_64-1.0.  
→4.docker.tar.xz
```

then run the loaded image:

```
$ docker run -it opensuse:42.2 /bin/bash
```

4.6 Building in a Self-Contained Environment

Hint: Abstract

Users building images with KIWI face problems if they want to build an image matching one of the following criteria:

- build should happen as non root user.
- build should happen on a host system distribution for which no KIWI packages exists.
- build happens on an incompatible host system distribution compared to the target image distribution. For example the host system rpm database is incompatible with the image rpm database and a dump/reload cycle is not possible between the two versions. Ideally the host system distribution is the same as the target image distribution.

This document describes how to perform the build process in a Docker container using the Dice containment build system written for KIWI in order to address the issues listed above.

The changes on the machine to become a build host will be reduced to the requirements of Dice and Docker.

4.6.1 Requirements

The following components needs to be installed on the build system:

- Dice - a containment build system for KIWI.
- Docker - a container framework based on the Linux container support in the kernel.
- Docker Image - a docker build container for KIWI.
- optionally Vagrant - a framework to run, provision and control virtual machines and container instances. Vagrant has a very nice interface to provision a machine prior to running the actual build. It also supports docker as a provider which makes it a perfect fit for complex provisioning tasks in combination with the Docker container system.
- optionally libvirt - Toolkit to interact with the virtualization capabilities of Linux. In combination with vagrant, libvirt can be used as provider for provision and control full virtual instances running via qemu. As docker shares the host system kernel and thus any device, because KIWI needs to use privileged docker containers for building images, the more secure but less performant solution is to use virtual machines to run the KIWI build.

4.6.2 Installing and Setting up Dice

The Dice packages and sources are available at the following locations:

- Build service project: <http://download.opensuse.org/repositories/Virtualization:/Appliances:/ContainerBuilder>
- Sources: <https://github.com/SUSE/dice>

```
$ sudo zypper in ruby[VERSION]-rubygem-dice
```

4.6.3 Installing and Setting up Docker

Docker packages are usually available with the used distribution.

```
$ sudo zypper in docker
```

Make sure that the user, who is intended to build images, is a member of the `docker` group. Run the following command:

```
$ sudo useradd -G docker <builduser>
```

It is required to logout and login again to let this change become active.

Once this is done you need to setup the Docker storage backend. By default Docker uses the device mapper to manage the storage for the containers it starts. Unfortunately, this does not work if the container is supposed to build images because it runs into conflicts with tools like **kpartx** which itself maps devices using the device mapper.

Fortunately, there is a solution for Docker which allows us to use Btrfs as the storage backend. The following is only required if your host system root filesystem is not btrfs:

```
$ sudo qemu-img create /var/lib/docker-storage.btrfs 20g
$ sudo mkfs.btrfs /var/lib/docker-storage.btrfs
$ sudo mkdir -p /var/lib/docker
$ sudo mount /var/lib/docker-storage.btrfs /var/lib/docker

$ sudo vi /etc/fstab

    /var/lib/docker-storage.btrfs /var/lib/docker btrfs defaults 0 0

$ sudo vi /etc/sysconfig/docker

    DOCKER_OPTS="-s btrfs"
```

Finally start the docker service:

```
$ sudo systemctl restart docker
```

4.6.4 Installing and Setting up the Build Container

In order to build in a contained environment Docker has to start a privileged system container. Such a container must be imported before Docker can use it. The build container is provided to you as a service and build with KIWI in the project at <http://download.opensuse.org/repositories/Virtualization:/Appliances:/Images>. The result image is pushed to <https://hub.docker.com/r/opensuse/dice>.

When building with Dice, the container will be automatically fetched from the docker registry. However this step can also be done prior to calling **dice** as follows:

```
$ docker pull opensuse/dice:latest
```

Note: Optional step

If a custom or newer version of the Build Container should be used, it is required to update the registry. This is because Dice always fetches the latest version of the Build Container from the registry.

1. Download the .tar.bz2 file which starts with Docker-Tumbleweed

```
$ wget http://download.opensuse.org/repositories/Virtualization:/
↳Appliances:/Images/images/Docker-Tumbleweed.XXXXXXX.docker.tar.xz
```

2. Import the downloaded tarball with the command **docker:**

```
$ docker load -i Docker-Tumbleweed.XXXXXXX.docker.tar
```

3. Tag the container and push back to the registry

```
$ docker push opensuse/dice:latest
```

4.6.5 Installing and Setting up Vagrant

Note: Optional step

By default Dice shares the KIWI image description directory with the Docker instance. If more data from the host should be shared with the Docker instance we recommend to use Vagrant for this provision tasks.

Installing Vagrant is well documented at <https://www.vagrantup.com/docs/installation/index.html>

Access to a machine started by Vagrant is done through SSH exclusively. Because of that an initial key setup is required in the Docker image vagrant should start. The KIWI Docker image includes the public key of the Vagrant key pair and thus allows access. It is important to understand that the private Vagrant key is not a secure key because the private key is not protected.

However, this is not a problem because Vagrant creates a new key pair for each machine it starts. In order to allow Vagrant the initial access and the creation of a new key pair, it's required to provide access to the insecure Vagrant private key. The following commands should not be executed as root, but as the intended user to build images.

```
$ mkdir -p ~/.dice/key
$ cp -a /usr/share/doc/packages/ruby*-rubygem-dice/key ~/.dice/key
```

4.6.6 Configuring Dice

If you build in a contained environment, there is no need to have KIWI installed on the host system. KIWI is part of the container and is only called there. However, a KIWI image description and some metadata defining how to run the container are required as input data.

4.6.7 Selecting a KIWI Template

If you don't have a KIWI description select one from the templates provided at the GitHub project hosting example appliance descriptions.

```
$ git clone https://github.com/SUSE/kiwi-descriptions
```

The descriptions hosted here also provides a default `Dicefile` as part of each image description.

4.6.8 The Dicefile

The Dicefile is the configuration file for the dice buildsystem backend. All it needs to know for a plain docker based build process is the selection of the buildhost to be a Docker container. The Dicefile's found in the above mentioned appliance descriptions look all like the following:

```
Dice.configure do |config|
  config.buildhost = :DOCKER
end
```

4.6.9 Building with Dice

If you have choosen to just use the default Dice configuration as provided with the example appliance descriptions, the following example command will build the image:

```
$ cd <git-clone-result-kiwi-descriptions>

$ dice build suse/x86_64/suse-leap-42.3-JeOS
$ dice status suse/x86_64/suse-leap-42.3-JeOS
```

4.6.10 Buildsystem Backends

Dice currently supports three build system backends:

1. Host buildsystem - Dice builds on the host like if you would call KIWI on the host directly.
2. Vagrant Buildsystem - Dice uses Vagrant to run a virtual system which could also be a container and build the image on this machine.

3. Docker buildsystem - Dice uses Docker directly to run the build in a container

The use of the Docker buildsystem has been already explained in the above chapters. The following sections explains the pros and cons of the other two available Buildsystem Backends.

4.6.11 Building with the Host Buildsystem

Using the Host Buildsystem basically tells Dice to ssh into the specified machine with the specified user and run KIWI. This is also the information which needs to be provided in a Dicefile. Using the Host Buildsystem is recommended if there are dedicated build machines available to take over KIWI build jobs.

4.6.12 The Dicefile

```
Dice.configure do |config|
  config.buildhost = "full-qualified-dns-name-or-ip-address"
  config.ssh_user = "vagrant"
end
```

After these changes a **dice build** command will make use of the Host Buildsystem and starts the KIWI build process there.

Note: Provisioning of the Host Buildsystem

There is no infrastructure in place which manages the machine specified as config.buildhost. This means it is currently in the responsibility of the user to make sure the specified machine exists and is accessible via the configured user. For the future we plan to implement a Public Cloud Buildsystem which then will allow provisioning and management of a public cloud instance e.g on Amazon EC2 in order to run the build. However we are not there yet.

4.6.13 Building with the Vagrant Buildsystem

Using the Vagrant Buildsystem should be considered if one or both of the following use cases applies:

1. The build task requires additional content or logic before the build can start. Vagrant serves as provisioning system to share data from the host with the guest containers.
2. The build task should run in a completely isolated virtual machine environment. Vagrant in combination with the libvirt provider serves as both; The tool to interact with the virtualization capabilities to run and manage virtual machine instances and as provisioning system to share data from the host with the virtual machines.

4.6.14 The Dicefile

The Dicefile in the context of Vagrant needs to know the user name to access the instance. The reason for this is, in Vagrant access to the system is handled over SSH.

```
Dice.configure do |config|
  config.ssh_user = "vagrant"
end
```

4.6.15 The Vagrant setup for the Docker Provider

The following is an example for the first use case and describes how to configure Dice to use Docker in combination with Vagrant as provisioning system.

4.6.16 The Vagrantfile

The existence of a Vagrantfile tells Dice to use Vagrant as Buildsysteem. Once you call **dice** to build the image it will call **vagrant** to bring up the container. In order to allow this, we have to tell Vagrant to use Docker for this task and provide parameters on how to run the container. At the same place the Dicefile exists we create the Vagrantfile with the following content:

```
VAGRANTFILE_API_VERSION = "2"

Vagrant.configure(VAGRANTFILE_API_VERSION) do |config|
  config.vm.provider "docker" do |d|
    d.image = "opensuse/dice:latest"
    d.create_args = ["-privileged=true", "-i", "-t"]
    # start the sshd in foreground to keep the container in running_
    ↪state
    d.cmd = ["/usr/sbin/sshd", "-D"]
    d.has_ssh = true
  end
end
```

After these changes a **dice build** command will make use of the Vagrant build system and offers a nice way to provision the Docker container instances prior to the actual KIWI build process. Vagrant will take over the task to run and manage the docker container via the `docker` tool chain.

4.6.17 The Vagrant setup for the libvirt Provider

The following sections are an example for the second use case and describes how to configure Dice to use libvirt in combination with Vagrant as provisioning and virtualization system.

4.6.18 The Vagrant Build Box

Apart from the Docker build container the Dice infrastructure also provides a virtual machine image also known as vagrant box which contains a system ready to build images with KIWI.

Download the Vagrant build box which starts with Vagrant-Libvirt-Tumbleweed from the Open BuildService and add the box to vagrant as follows:

```
$ wget http://download.opensuse.org/repositories/Virtualization:/
↳Appliances:/Images/images/Vagrant-Libvirt-Tumbleweed.XXXXXXX.
↳vagrant.libvirt.box

$ vagrant box add --provider libvirt --name kiwi-build-box Vagrant-
↳Libvirt-Tumbleweed.XXXXXXX.vagrant.libvirt.box

$ export VAGRANT_DEFAULT_PROVIDER=libvirt
```

The command **vagrant box list** must list the box with name kiwi-build-box as referenced in the following Vagrantfile setup.

4.6.19 The Vagrantfile

```
VAGRANTFILE_API_VERSION = "2"

Vagrant.configure(VAGRANTFILE_API_VERSION) do |config|
  config.vm.box = "kiwi-build-box"

  config.vm.provider "libvirt" do |lv|
    lv.memory = "1024"
  end
end
```

After these changes a **dice build** command will make use of the Vagrant build system and offers a nice way to provision fully isolated qemu instances via libvirt prior to the actual KIWI build process. Vagrant will take over the task to run and manage the virtual machines via the libvirt tool chain.

4.7 Building in the Open Buildservice

Hint: Abstract

This document gives a brief overview how to build images with KIWI in version 9.16.27 inside of the Open Buildservice. A tutorial on the Open Buildservice itself can be found here: https://en.opensuse.org/openSUSE:Build_Service_Tutorial

The next generation KIWI is fully integrated with the build service. In order to start it's best to checkout one of the integration test image build projects from the base Testing project `Virtualization:Appliances:Images:Testing_ARCH` at:

<https://build.opensuse.org>

In order to use the next generation KIWI to build an appliance in the build service it is required to add the Builder project as repository to the KIWI XML configuration like in the following example:

```
<repository type="rpm-md" alias="kiwi-next-generation">
  <source path="obs://Virtualization:Appliances:Builder/Factory"/>
</repository>
```

4.8 Working with Images

These sections contains some “low level” topics which are useful for different image types.

4.8.1 Deploy ISO Image on an USB Stick

Abstract

This page provides further information for handling ISO images built with KIWI and references the following articles:

- *Build an ISO Hybrid Live Image*

In KIWI all generated ISO images are created to be hybrid. This means, the image can be used as a CD/DVD or as a disk. This works because the ISO image also has a partition table embedded. With more and more computers delivered without a CD/DVD drive this becomes important.

The very same ISO image can be copied onto a USB stick and used as a bootable disk. The following procedure shows how to do this:

1. Plug in a USB stick

Once plugged in, check which Unix device name the stick was assigned to. The following command provides an overview about all linux storage devices:

```
$ lsblk
```

2. Dump the ISO image on the USB stick:

Warning: Make sure the selected device really points to your stick because the following operation can not be revoked and will destroy all data on the selected device

```
$ dd if=LimeJeOS-Leap-42.3.x86_64-1.42.3.iso of=/dev/
→<stickdevice>
```

3. Boot from your USB Stick

Activate booting from USB in your BIOS/UEFI. As many firmware has different procedures on how to do it, look into your user manual. Many firmware offers a boot menu which can be activated at boot time.

4.8.2 Deploy ISO Image as File on a FAT32 Formated USB Stick

Abstract

This page provides further information for handling ISO images built with KIWI and references the following articles:

- [*Build an ISO Hybrid Live Image*](#)

In KIWI, all generated ISO images are created to be hybrid. This means, the image can be used as a CD/DVD or as a disk. The deployment of such an image onto a disk like an USB stick normally destroys all existing data on this device. Most USB sticks are pre-formatted with a FAT32 Windows File System and to keep the existing data on the stick untouched a different deployment needs to be used.

The following deployment process copies the ISO image as an additional file to the USB stick and makes the USB stick bootable. The ability to boot from the stick is configured through a SYSLINUX feature which allows to loopback mount an ISO file and boot the kernel and initrd directly from the ISO file.

The initrd loaded in this process must also be able to loopback mount the ISO file to access the root filesystem and boot the live system. The dracut initrd system used by KIWI provides this feature upstream called as “iso-scan”. Therefore all KIWI generated live ISO images supports this deployment mode.

For copying the ISO file on the USB stick and the setup of the SYSLINUX bootloader to make use of the “iso-scan” feature an extra tool named `live-grub-stick` exists. The following procedure shows how to setup the USB stick with `live-grub-stick`:

1. Install the `live-grub-stick` package from software.opensuse.org:
2. Plug in a USB stick

Once plugged in, check which Unix device name the FAT32 partition was assigned to. The following command provides an overview about all storage devices and their filesystems:

```
$ sudo lsblk --fs
```

3. Call the `live-grub-stick` command as follows:

Assuming “/dev/sdz1” was the FAT32 partition selected from the output of the `lsblk` command:

```
$ sudo live-grub-stick LimeJeOS-Leap-42.3.x86_64-1.42.3.iso /  
→dev/sdz1
```

4. Boot from your USB Stick

Activate booting from USB in your BIOS/UEFI. As many firmware has different procedures on how to do it, look into your user manual. EFI booting from iso image is not supported at the moment, for EFI booting use `–isohybrid` option with `live-grub-stick`, however note that all the data on the stick will be lost. Many firmware offers a boot menu which can be activated at boot time. Usually this can be reached by pressing the `ESC` or `F12` keys.

4.8.3 KIWI Image Description for Amazon EC2

Abstract

This page provides further information for handling vmx images built with KIWI and references the following articles:

- [Build a Virtual Disk Image](#)

A virtual disk image which is able to boot in the Amazon EC2 cloud framework has to comply the following constraints:

- Xen tools and libraries must be installed
- cloud-init package must be installed
- cloud-init configuration for Amazon must be provided
- Grub bootloader modules for Xen must be installed
- AWS tools must be installed
- Disk size must be set to 10G
- Kernel parameters must allow for xen console

To meet this requirements add or update the KIWI image description as follows:

1. Software packages

Make sure to add the following packages to the package list

Note: Package names used in the following list matches the package names of the SUSE distribution and might be different on other distributions.

```
<package name="aws-cli"/>
<package name="grub2-x86_64-xen"/>
<package name="xen-libs"/>
<package name="xen-tools-domU"/>
<package name="cloud-init"/>
```

2. Image Type definition

Update the vmx image type setup as follows

```
<type image="vmx"
  filesystem="ext4"
  bootloader="grub2"
  kernelcmdline="console=xvc0 multipath=off net.ifnames=0"
  boottimeout="1"
  devicepersistency="by-label"
  firmware="ec2">
  <size unit="M">10240</size>
  <machine xen_loader="hvmloader"/>
</type>
```

3. Cloud Init setup

Cloud init is a service which runs at boot time and allows to customize the system by activating one ore more cloud init modules. For Amazon EC2 the following configuration file `/etc/cloud/cloud.cfg` needs to be provided as part of the overlay files in your KIWI image description

```
users:
  - default

disable_root: true
preserve_hostname: false
syslog_fix_perms: root:root

datasource_list: [ NoCloud, Ec2, None ]

cloud_init_modules:
  - migrator
  - bootcmd
  - write-files
  - growpart
  - resizefs
  - set_hostname
  - update_hostname
  - update_etc_hosts
  - ca-certs
  - rsyslog
  - users-groups
  - ssh
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
cloud_config_modules:
- mounts
- ssh-import-id
- locale
- set-passwords
- package-update-upgrade-install
- timezone

cloud_final_modules:
- scripts-per-once
- scripts-per-boot
- scripts-per-instance
- scripts-user
- ssh-authkey-fingerprints
- keys-to-console
- phone-home
- final-message
- power-state-change

system_info:
  default_user:
    name: ec2-user
    gecost: "cloud-init created default user"
    lock_passwd: True
    sudo: ["ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:ALL"]
    shell: /bin/bash
  paths:
    cloud_dir: /var/lib/cloud/
    templates_dir: /etc/cloud/templates/
  ssh_svcname: sshd
```

An image built with the above setup can be uploaded into the Amazon EC2 cloud and registered as image. For further information on how to upload to EC2 see: [ec2uploadimg](#)

4.8.4 KIWI Image Description for Microsoft Azure

Abstract

This page provides further information for handling vmx images built with KIWI and references the following articles:

- *Build a Virtual Disk Image*

A virtual disk image which is able to boot in the Microsoft Azure cloud framework has to comply the following constraints:

- Hyper-V tools must be installed

- Microsoft Azure Agent must be installed
- Disk size must be set to 30G
- Kernel parameters must allow for serial console

To meet this requirements update the KIWI image description as follows:

1. Software packages

Make sure to add the following packages to the package list

Note: Package names used in the following list matches the package names of the SUSE distribution and might be different on other distributions.

```
<package name="hyper-v"/>
<package name="python-azure-agent"/>
```

2. Image Type definition

Update the vmx image type setup as follows

```
<type image="vmx"
  filesystem="ext4"
  boottimeout="1"
  kernelcmdline="console=ttyS0 rootdelay=300 net.ifnames=0"
  devicepersistency="by-uuid"
  format="vhd-fixed"
  formatoptions="force_size"
  bootloader="grub2"
  bootpartition="true"
  bootpartsize="1024">
  <size unit="M">30720</size>
</type>
```

An image built with the above setup can be uploaded into the Microsoft Azure cloud and registered as image. For further information on how to upload to Azure see: [azurectl](#)

4.8.5 KIWI Image Description for Google Compute Engine

Abstract

This page provides further information for handling vmx images built with KIWI and references the following articles:

- *Build a Virtual Disk Image*

A virtual disk image which is able to boot in the Google Compute Engine cloud framework has to comply the following constraints:

- KIWI type must be an expandable disk
- Google Compute Engine init must be installed
- Disk size must be set to 10G
- Kernel parameters must allow for serial console

To meet this requirements update the KIWI image description as follows:

1. Software packages

Make sure to add the following packages to the package list

Note: Package names used in the following list matches the package names of the SUSE distribution and might be different on other distributions.

```
<package name="google-compute-engine-init"/>
```

2. Image Type definition

To allow the image to be expanded to the configured disk geometry of the instance started by Google Compute Engine it is suggested to let KIWI's OEM boot code take over that task. It would also be possible to try cloud-init's resize module but we found conflicts when two cloud init systems, google-compute-engine-init and cloud-init were used together. Thus for now we stick with KIWI's boot code which can resize the disk from within the initrd before the system gets activated through systemd.

Update the vmx image type setup to be changed into an expandable (oem) type as follows:

```
<type image="oem"
  initrd_system="dracut"
  filesystem="ext4" boottimeout="1"
  kernelcmdline="console=ttyS0,38400n8 net.ifnames=0 NON_
  ↪PERSISTENT_DEVICE_NAMES=1"
  format="gce"
  bootloader="grub2"
  <size unit="M">10240</size>
  <oemconfig>
    <oem-swap>>false</oem-swap>
  </oemconfig>
</type>
```

An image built with the above setup can be uploaded into the Google Compute Engine cloud and registered as image. For further information on how to upload to Google see: [google-cloud-sdk](#) on [software.opensuse.org](#)

4.8.6 Setting Up a Network Boot Server

Abstract

This page provides further information for handling PXE images built with KIWI and references the following articles:

- *[Build a PXE Root File System Image](#)*

To be able to deploy PXE boot images created with KIWI, you need to set up a network boot server providing the services DHCP and tftp.

Installing and Configuring tftp

1. Install the packages tftp and kiwi-pxeboot.
2. Start the tftpd service by calling:

```
$ systemctl start tftpd.socket
$ systemctl start tftpd
```

Installing and Configuring DHCP

Contrary to the tftp server setup the following instructions can only serve as an example. Depending on your network structure, the IP addresses, ranges and domain settings need to be adapted to allow the DHCP server to work within your network. If you already have a DHCP server running in your network, make sure that the `filename` and `next-server` directives are correctly set on this server.

The following steps describe how to set up a new DHCP server instance using dnsmasq:

1. Install the dnsmasq package.
2. Create the file `/etc/dnsmasq.conf` and insert the following content:

Note: Placeholders

Replace all placeholders (written in uppercase) with data fitting your network setup.

```
# Don't function as a DNS server:
port=0

# Log lots of extra information about DHCP transactions.
log-dhcp

# Set the root directory for files available via FTP,
# usually "/srv/tftpboot":
tftp-root=TFTP_ROOT_DIR

# The boot filename, Server name, Server Ip Address
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
dhcp-boot=pxelinux.0,,BOOT_SERVER_IP

# Disable re-use of the DHCP servername and filename fields as
# →extra
# option space. That's to avoid confusing some old or broken
# DHCP clients.
dhcp-no-override

# PXE menu. The first part is the text displayed to the user.
# The second is the timeout, in seconds.
pxe-prompt="Booting FOG Client", 1

# The known types are x86PC, PC98, IA64_EFI, Alpha, Arc_x86,
# Intel_Lean_Client, IA32_EFI, BC_EFI, Xscale_EFI and X86-64_EFI
# This option is first and will be the default if there is no
# →input
# from the user.
pxe-service=X86PC, "Boot to FOG", pxelinux.0
pxe-service=X86-64_EFI, "Boot to FOG UEFI", ipxe
pxe-service=BC_EFI, "Boot to FOG UEFI PXE-BC", ipxe

dhcp-range=BOOT_SERVER_IP,proxy
```

3. Run the dnsmasq server by calling:

```
systemctl start dnsmasq
```

4.8.7 Setting Up YaST at First Boot

Abstract

This page provides information how to setup the KIWI XML description to start the SUSE YaST system setup utility at first boot of the image

To be able to use YaST in a non interactive way, create a YaST profile which tells the autoyast module what to do. To create the profile, run:

```
yast autoyast
```

Once the YaST profile exists, update the KIWI XML description as follows:

1. Edit the KIWI XML file and add the following package to the <packages type="image"> section:

```
<package name="yast2-firstboot"/>
```

2. Copy the YaST profile file as overlay file to your KIWI image description overlay directory:

```
cd IMAGE_DESCRIPTION_DIRECTORY
mkdir -p root/etc/YaST2
cp PROFILE_FILE root/etc/YaST2/firstboot.xml
```

3. Copy and activate the YaST firstboot template. This is done by the following instructions which needs to be written into the KIWI `config.sh` which is stored in the image description directory:

```
sysconfig_firsboot=/etc/sysconfig/firstboot
sysconfig_template=/var/adm/fillup-templates/sysconfig.firstboot
if [ ! -e "${sysconfig_firsboot}" ]; then
    cp "${sysconfig_template}" "${sysconfig_firsboot}"
fi

touch /var/lib/YaST2/reconfig_system
```

4.8.8 PXE Client Setup Configuration

Abstract

This page provides further information for handling PXE images built with KIWI and references the following articles:

- [*Build a PXE Root File System Image*](#)

All PXE boot based deployment methods are controlled by configuration files located in `/srv/tftpboot/KIWI` on the PXE server. Such a configuration file can either be client-specific (`config.MAC_ADDRESS`, for example `config.00.AB.F3.11.73.C8`), or generic (`config.default`).

In an environment with heterogeneous clients, this allows to have a default configuration suitable for the majority of clients, to have configurations suitable for a group of clients (for example machines with similar or identical hardware), and individual configurations for selected machines.

The configuration file contains data about the image and about configuration, synchronization, and partition parameters. The configuration file has got the following general format:

```
IMAGE="device;name;version;srvip;bsize;compressed,...,"
DISK="device"
PART="size;id;Mount,...,size;id;Mount"
RAID="raid-level;device1;device2;..."

AOEROOT=ro-device[,rw-device]
NBDROOT="ip-address;export-name;device;swap-export-name;swap-device;
write-export-name;write-device"
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
NFSROOT="ip-address;path"

UNIONFS_CONFIGURATION="rw-partition,compressed-partition,overlayfs"

CONF="src;dest;srvip;bsize;[hash],...,src;dest;srvip;bsize;[hash]"

KIWI_BOOT_TIMEOUT="seconds"
KIWI_KERNEL_OPTIONS="opt1 opt2 ..."

REBOOT_IMAGE=1
RELOAD_CONFIG=1
RELOAD_IMAGE=1
```

Note: Quoting the Values

The configuration file is sourced by Bash, so the same quoting rules as for Bash apply.

Not all configuration options needs to be specified. It depends on the setup of the client which configuration values are required. The following is a collection of client setup examples which covers all supported PXE client configurations.

Setup Client with Remote Root

To serve the image from a remote location and redirect all write operations on a tmpfs, the following setup is required:

```
# When using AoE, see vblade toolchain for image export

AOEROOT=/dev/etherd/e0.1
UNIONFS_CONFIG=tmpfs,aoe,overlay

# When using NFS, see exports manual page for image export

NFSROOT="192.168.100.2;/srv/tftpboot/image/root"
UNIONFS_CONFIG=tmpfs,nfs,overlay

# When using NBD, see nbd-server manual page for image export

NBDROOT=192.168.100.2;root_export;/dev/nbd0
UNIONFS_CONFIG=tmpfs,nbd,overlay
```

The above setup shows the most common use case where the image built with KIWI is populated over the network using either AoE, NBD or NFS in combination with overlayfs which redirects all write operations to be local to the client. In any case a setup of either AoE, NBD or NFS on the image server is required beforehand.

Setup Client with System on Local Disk

To deploy the image on a local disk the following setup is required:

Note: In the referenced `suse-leap-42.3-JeOS XML` description the `pxe` type must be changed as follows and the image needs to be rebuild:

```
<type image="pxe" filesystem="ext3" boot="netboot/suse-leap42.3"/>
```

```
IMAGE="/dev/sda2;LimeJeOS-Leap-42.3.x86_64;1.42.3;192.168.100.2;4096  
↪ "  
DISK="/dev/sda"  
PART="5;S;X,X;L;/"
```

The setup above will create a partition table on `sda` with a 5MB swap partition (no mountpoint) and the rest of the disk will be a Linux(L) partition with `/` as mountpoint. The (X) in the PART setup specifies a place holder to indicate the default behaviour.

Setup Client with System on Local MD RAID Disk

To deploy the image on a local disk with prior software RAID configuration, the following setup is required:

Note: In the referenced `suse-leap-42.3-JeOS XML` description the `pxe` type must be changed as follows and the image needs to be rebuild:

```
<type image="pxe" filesystem="ext3" boot="netboot/suse-leap42.3"/>
```

```
RAID='1;/dev/sda;/dev/sdb'  
IMAGE="/dev/md1;LimeJeOS-Leap-42.3.x86_64;1.42.3;192.168.100.2;4096"  
PART="5;S;x,x;L;/"
```

The first parameter of the RAID line is the RAID level. So far only `raid1` (mirroring) is supported. The second and third parameter specifies the raid disk devices which make up the array. If a RAID line is present all partitions in PART will be created as RAID partitions. The first RAID is named `md0`, the second one `md1` and so on. It is required to specify the correct RAID partition in the IMAGE line according to the PART setup. In this case `md0` is reserved for the SWAP space and `md1` is reserved for the system.

Setup Loading of Custom Configuration File(s)

In order to load for example a custom `/etc/hosts` file on the client, the following setup is required:

```
CONF="hosts;/etc/hosts;192.168.1.2;4096;ffffffff"
```

On boot of the client KIWI's boot code will fetch the `hosts` file from the root of the server (192.168.1.2) with 4k blocksize and deploy it as `/etc/hosts` on the client. The protocol is by default `tftp` but can be changed via the `kiwiservertype` kernel commandline option. For details, see *Setup a Different Download Protocol and Server*

Setup Client to Force Reload Image

To force the reload of the system image even if the image on the disk is up-to-date, the following setup is required:

```
RELOAD_IMAGE=1
```

The option only applies to configurations with a DISK/PART setup

Setup Client to Force Reload Configuration Files

To force the reload of all configuration files specified in `CONF`, the following setup is required:

```
RELOAD_CONFIG=1
```

By default only configuration files which has changed according to their `md5sum` value will be reloaded. With the above setup all files will be reloaded from the PXE server. The option only applies to configurations with a DISK/PART setup

Setup Client for Reboot After Deployment

To reboot the system after the initial deployment process is done the following setup is required:

```
REBOOT_IMAGE=1
```

Setup custom kernel boot options

To deactivate the kernel mode setting on local boot of the client the following setup is required:

```
KIWI_KERNEL_OPTIONS="nomodeset"
```

Note: This does not influence the kernel options passed to the client if it boots from the network. In order to setup those the PXE configuration on the PXE server needs to be changed

Setup a Custom Boot Timeout

To setup a 10sec custom timeout for the local boot of the client the following setup is required.

```
KIWI_BOOT_TIMEOUT="10"
```

Note: This does not influence the boot timeout if the client boots off from the network.

Setup a Different Download Protocol and Server

By default all downloads controlled by the KIWI linuxrc code are performed by an atftp call using the TFTP protocol. With PXE the download protocol is fixed and thus you cannot change the way how the kernel and the boot image (`initrd`) is downloaded. As soon as Linux takes over, the download protocols `http`, `https` and `ftp` are supported too. KIWI uses the `curl` program to support the additional protocols.

To select one of the additional download protocols the following kernel parameters need to be specified

```
kiwiserver=192.168.1.1 kiwiservertype=ftp
```

To set up this parameters edit the file `/srv/tftpboot/pxelinux.cfg/default` on your PXE boot server and change the `append` line accordingly.

Note: Once configured all downloads except for kernel and `initrd` are now controlled by the given server and protocol. You need to make sure that this server provides the same directory and file structure as initially provided by the `kiwi-pxeboot` package

4.8.9 Gracefully Uninstall System Packages

Abstract

This page provides some details about uninstalling packages and how it could be used in order to remove packages once the image configuration, using the `config.sh` script, is done.

Uninstalling packages from the system image that were previously installed during the installation phase is an operation that can be handy under certain circumstances. As an example, someone could be interested in performing some configuration tasks in the `config.sh` script (see [prepare step](#) for further details). That would require to include some extra packages, which are only needed at build time. One example would be compiling some unpacked application sources.

KIWI description file schema defines package requests of type `uninstall` and type `delete`:

- The `uninstall` requests perform a clean packages removal by removing any package dependent on the requested ones and also removing orphan dependencies.
- The `delete` requests perform a hard removal without any dependency check, thus only listed packages are deleted even if it breaks dependencies or compromises any underlying package database.

This page focuses on `uninstall` package requests.

This is an example of the package requests in a description of a Container image that removes user related tools and development tools:

```
<packages type="image">
  <package name="ca-certificates"/>
  <package name="ca-certificates-mozilla"/>
  <package name="coreutils"/>
  <package name="iputils"/>
  <package name="openSUSE-build-key"/>
  <package name="krb5"/>
  <package name="netcfg"/>
  <package name="kubic-locale-archive"/>
  <package name="make"/>
  <package name="llvm-clang"/>
  <archive name="foo_app_sources.tar.gz"/>
</packages>
<!-- These packages will be uninstalled after running config.sh -->
<packages type="uninstall">
  <package name="shadow"/>
  <package name="make"/>
  <package name="llvm-clang"/>
</packages>
```

In the previous example after installing all the packages and archives, image repositories are configured and then the `config.sh` script is executed. In `config.sh` the `foo_app_sources.tar.gz` could be compiled using the `make` and `llvm` packages with something like a `make install` call. It is a common practice to build tiny and single purpose container images, thus makes sense to remove unneeded packages, like `make` and `llvm-clang`. To gracefully remove them, they have been included into the *type="uninstall"* packages list. Those packages will be removed including a dependency cleanup.

Warning: An `uninstall` packages request deletes:

- the listed packages,
- the packages dependent on the listed ones, and
- any orphaned dependency of the listed packages.

Use this feature with caution as it can easily cause the removal of sensitive tools leading to failures in later build stages.

In the above example also the *shadow* package is being removed, again, in this specific case, it

is not expected to be needed in the final image. The *shadow* package mainly provides tools to handle user accounts. In a container image, once everything is installed and configured, it is not expected to require any further user account modification to the image, tools such as *useradd* or *usermod* will not be required.

4.8.10 KIWI Image Description for Vagrant

Abstract

This page provides further information for handling VMX images built with KIWI and references the following article:

- [Build a Virtual Disk Image](#)

Vagrant is a framework to implement consistent processing/testing work environments based on Virtualization technologies. To run a system, Vagrant needs so-called **boxes**. A box is a TAR archive containing a virtual disk image and some metadata.

To build Vagrant boxes, use **veewee** which builds boxes based on AutoYaST. As an alternative, use **Packer**, which is provided by Vagrant itself.

Both tools are based on the official installation media (DVDs) as shipped by the distribution vendor.

The KIWI way of building images might be helpful, if such a media does not exist. For example, if the distribution is still under development or you want to use a collection of your own repositories.

In addition, you can use the KIWI image description as source for the **Open Build Service** which allows building and maintaining boxes.

A Vagrant box which is able to work with Vagrant has to comply with the constraints documented in **Vagrant Box Constraints**. Applied to the referenced KIWI image description from [Build a Virtual Disk Image](#), the following changes are required:

1. Add mandatory packages

```
<package name="sudo"/>
<package name="openssh"/>
<package name="rsync"/>
```

2. Update the image type setup

```
<type image="vmx" filesystem="ext4" format="vagrant"
  ↪boottimeout="0">
  <vagrantconfig provider="libvirt" virtualsize="42"/>
  <size unit="G">42</size>
</type>
```

This modifies the type to build a Vagrant box for the libvirt provider including a pre-defined disk size. The disk size is optional, but recommended to provide some free space on disk.

3. Add Vagrant user

```
<users group='vagrant'>
  <user name='vagrant' password='vh4vw1N4alxKQ' home='/home/
  ↪vagrant' />
</users>
```

This adds the **vagrant** user to the system and applies the name of the user as the password for login. Change this as you see fit.

4. Integrate public SSH key

Reach out to [Insecure Keys](#) for details on this keys. Add the public key to the box as overlay file in your image description at `home/vagrant/.ssh/authorized_keys`

5. Setup and start SSH daemon

In `config.sh` add the start of the `sshd` and the initial creation of machine keys as follows:

```
#=====
# Create ssh machine keys
#-----
/usr/sbin/sshd-gen-keys-start

#=====
# Activate services
#-----
suseInsertService sshd
```

Also make sure to setup **UseDNS=no** in `etc/ssh/sshd_config` This can be done by an overlay file or clever patching of the file in the above mentioned `config.sh` file.

6. Configure sudo for Vagrant user

Add the `etc/sudoers` file to the box as overlay file and make sure the user: **vagrant** is configured to allow passwordless root permissions.

An image built with the above setup creates a box file with the extension `.vagrant.libvirt.box`. That box file can now be added to vagrant with the command:

```
vagrant box add my-box image-file.vagrant.libvirt.box
```

Note: Using the box requires a correct Vagrant installation on your machine. The libvirt daemon and the libvirt default network need to be running.

Once added to Vagrant, boot the box and log in with the following sequence of **vagrant** commands:

```
vagrant init my-box  
vagrant up --provider libvirt  
vagrant ssh
```

Note: Vagrant Providers

Currently, KIWI only supports the libvirt provider. There are other providers like virtualbox and also vmware available which requires a different box layout currently not supported by KIWI.

4.8.11 Booting a Live ISO Image from Network

Abstract

This page provides further information for handling ISO images built with KIWI and references the following articles:

- [*Build an ISO Hybrid Live Image*](#)

In KIWI, live ISO images can be configured to boot via PXE. This functionality requires a network boot server setup on the system. Details how to setup such a server can be found in [*Setting Up a Network Boot Server*](#).

After the live ISO was built as shown in [*Build an ISO Hybrid Live Image*](#), the following configuration steps are required to boot from the network:

1. Extract initrd/kernel From Live ISO

The PXE boot process loads the configured kernel and initrd from the PXE server. For this reason, those two files must be extracted from the live ISO image and copied to the PXE server as follows:

```
$ mount LimeJeOS-Leap-42.3.x86_64-1.42.3.iso /mnt  
$ cp /mnt/boot/x86_64/loader/initrd /srv/tftpboot/boot/initrd  
$ cp /mnt/boot/x86_64/loader/linux /srv/tftpboot/boot/linux  
$ umount /mnt
```

Note: This step must be repeated with any new build of the live ISO image

2. Export Live ISO To The Network

Access to the live ISO file is implemented using the AoE protocol in KIWI. This requires the export of the live ISO file as remote block device which is typically done with the **vb1ade** toolkit. Install the following package on the system which is expected to export the live ISO image:

```
$ zypper in vblade
```

Note: Not all versions of AoE are compatible with any kernel. This means the kernel on the system exporting the live ISO image must provide a compatible `aoe` kernel module compared to the kernel used in the live ISO image.

Once done, export the live ISO image as follows:

```
$ vbladed 0 1 INTERFACE LimeJeOS-Leap-42.3.x86_64-1.42.3.iso
```

The above command exports the given ISO file as a block storage device to the network of the given `INTERFACE`. On any machine except the one exporting the file, it will appear as `/dev/etherd/e0.1` once the **aoe** kernel module was loaded. The two numbers, 0 and 1 in the above example, classifies a major and minor number which is used in the device node name on the reading side, in this case `e0.1`. The numbers given at export time must match the `AOEINTERFACE` name as described in the next step.

Note: Only machines in the same network of the given `INTERFACE` can see the exported live ISO image. If virtual machines are the target to boot the live ISO image they could all be connected through a bridge. In this case `INTERFACE` is the bridge device. The availability scope of the live ISO image on the network is in general not influenced by KIWI and is a task for the network administrators.

3. Setup live ISO boot entry in PXE configuration

Edit the file `/srv/tftpboot/pxelinux.cfg/default` and create a boot entry of the form:

```
LABEL Live-Boot
    kernel boot/linux
    append initrd=boot/initrd rd.kiwi.live.pxe_
    ↪root=live:AOEINTERFACE=e0.1
```

- The boot parameter `rd.kiwi.live.pxe` tells the KIWI boot process to setup the network and to load the required `aoe` kernel module.
- The boot parameter `root=live:AOEINTERFACE=e0.1` specifies the interface name as it was exported by the **vbladed** command from the last step. Currently only AoE (Ata Over Ethernet) is supported.

4. Boot from the Network

Within the network which has access to the PXE server and the exported live ISO image, any network client can now boot the live system. A test based on QEMU is done as follows:

```
$ qemu -boot n
```

- ISO Hybrid Live Image

An iso image which can be dumped on a CD/DVD or USB stick and boots off from this media without interfering with other system storage components. A useful pocket system for testing and demo and debugging purposes.

- Virtual Disk Image

An image representing the system disk, useful for cloud frameworks like Amazon EC2, Google Compute Engine or Microsoft Azure.

- OEM Expandable Disk Image

An image representing an expandable system disk. This means after deployment the system can resize itself to the new disk geometry. The resize operation is configurable as part of the image description and an installation image for CD/DVD, USB stick and Network deployment can be created in addition.

- PXE root File System Image

A root filesystem image which can be deployed via KIWI's PXE netboot infrastructure. A client configuration file on the pxe server controls how the root filesystem image should be deployed. Many different deployment strategies are possible, e.g root over NBD, AoE or NFS for diskless and diskfull clients.

- Docker Container Image

An archive image suitable for the docker container engine. The image can be loaded via the `docker load` command and works within the scope of the container engine

4.9 Supported Distributions

KIWI can build the above image types for distributions which are **equal** or **newer** compared to the following list:

- CentOS 7
- Fedora 25
- openSUSE Leap 42
- Red Hat Enterprise 7
- SUSE Linux Enterprise 12
- Tumbleweed
- Ubuntu Xenial

For anything older please consider to use the legacy KIWI version *v7.x* For more details on the legacy kiwi, see: *[Legacy KIWI vs. Next Generation](#)*.

CHAPTER 5

KIWI Commands

Hint: This document provides a list of the existing KIWI commands for version 9.16.27.

5.1 kiwi

5.1.1 SYNOPSIS

```
kiwi [global options] service <command> [<args>]

kiwi -h | --help
kiwi [--profile=<name>...]
    [--type=<build_type>]
    [--logfile=<filename>]
    [--debug]
    [--color-output]
    image <command> [<args>...]
kiwi [--debug]
    [--color-output]
    result <command> [<args>...]
kiwi [--profile=<name>...]
    [--shared-cache-dir=<directory>]
    [--type=<build_type>]
    [--logfile=<filename>]
    [--debug]
    [--color-output]
    system <command> [<args>...]
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
kiwi compat <legacy_args>...  
kiwi -v | --version  
kiwi help
```

5.1.2 DESCRIPTION

KIWI is an imaging solution that is based on an image XML description. Such a description is represented by a directory which includes at least one `config.xml` or `.kiwi` file and may as well include other files like scripts or configuration data.

A collection of example image descriptions can be found on the github repository here: <https://github.com/SUSE/kiwi-descriptions>. Most of the descriptions provide a so called JeOS image. JeOS means Just enough Operating System. A JeOS is a small, text only based image including a predefined remote source setup to allow installation of missing software components at a later point in time.

KIWI operates in two steps. The system build command combines both steps into one to make it easier to start with KIWI. The first step is the preparation step and if that step was successful, a creation step follows which is able to create different image output types.

In the preparation step, you prepare a directory including the contents of your new filesystem based on one or more software package source(s) The creation step is based on the result of the preparation step and uses the contents of the new image root tree to create the output image.

KIWI supports the creation of the following image types:

- ISO Live Systems
- Virtual Disk for e.g cloud frameworks
- OEM Expandable Disk for system deployment from ISO or the network
- File system images for deployment in a pxe boot environment

Depending on the image type a variety of different disk formats and architectures are supported.

5.1.3 GLOBAL OPTIONS

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| --color-output | Use Escape Sequences to print different types of information in colored output. The underlying terminal has to understand those escape characters. Error messages appear red, warning messages yellow and debugging information will be printed light grey. |
| --debug | Print debug information on the commandline. |
| --logfile=<filename> | Specify log file. the logfile contains detailed information about the process. |

- profile=<name>** Select profile to use. The specified profile must be part of the XML description. The option can be specified multiple times to allow using a combination of profiles
- shared-cache-dir=<directory>** Specify an alternative shared cache directory. The directory is shared via bind mount between the build host and image root system and contains information about package repositories and their cache and meta data. The default location is set to /var/cache/kiwi
- type=<build_type>** Select image build type. The specified build type must be configured as part of the XML description.
- version** Show program version

5.1.4 EXAMPLE

```
$ git clone https://github.com/SUSE/kiwi-descriptions

$ kiwi --type vmx system build \
  --description kiwi-descriptions/suse/x86_64/suse-leap-42.3-JeOS_
↪ \
  --target-dir /tmp/myimage
```

5.1.5 RUNTIME CONFIG FILE

To control custom parameters of the tool chain used by KIWI a user specific configuration file can be provided as:

```
~/.config/kiwi/config.yml
```

The contents of the file is in YAML format and supports the following setup parameters:

```
xz:
  - options: -a -b -c

  # Specifies XZ-compression-options
  # For details see man xz

obs:
  - download_url: url

  # Specifies download server url of an open builds service instance
  # defaults to: http://download.opensuse.org/repositories

  - public: true|false

  # Specifies if the builds service instance is public or private
  # defaults to: true
```

5.1.6 COMPATIBILITY

This version of KIWI uses a different caller syntax compared to former versions. However there is a compatibility mode which allows to use a legacy KIWI commandline as follows:

```
$ kiwi compat \  
    --build kiwi-descriptions/suse/x86_64/suse-leap-42.3-JeOS \  
    --type vmx -d /tmp/myimage
```

5.2 kiwi result list

5.2.1 SYNOPSIS

```
kiwi [global options] service <command> [<args>]  
  
kiwi result list -h | --help  
kiwi result list --target-dir=<directory>  
kiwi result list help
```

5.2.2 DESCRIPTION

List build results from a previous build or create command. Please note if you build an image several times with the same target directory the build result information will be overwritten each time you build the image. Therefore the build result list is valid for the last build

5.2.3 OPTIONS

--target-dir=<directory> directory containing the kiwi build results

5.3 kiwi result bundle

5.3.1 SYNOPSIS

```
kiwi [global options] service <command> [<args>]  
  
kiwi result bundle -h | --help  
kiwi result bundle --target-dir=<directory> --id=<bundle_id> --  
    ↪bundle-dir=<directory>  
    [--zsync_source=<download_location>]  
kiwi result bundle help
```

5.3.2 DESCRIPTION

Create result bundle from the image build results in the specified target directory. Each result image will contain the specified bundle identifier as part of its filename. Uncompressed image files will also become xz compressed and a sha sum will be created from every result image.

5.3.3 OPTIONS

- bundle-dir=<directory>** directory containing the bundle results, compressed versions of image results and their sha sums
- id=<bundle_id>** bundle id, could be a free form text and is appended to the image version information if present as part of the result image filename
- target-dir=<directory>** directory containing the kiwi build results
- zsync_source=<download_location>** Specify the download location from which the bundle file(s) can be fetched from. The information is effective if `zsync` is used to sync the bundle.
 - The zsync control file is only created for those bundle files which are marked for compression because in a KIWI build only those are meaningful for a partial binary file download.
 - It is expected that all files from a bundle are placed to the same download location

5.4 kiwi system prepare

5.4.1 SYNOPSIS

```
kiwi [global options] service <command> [<args>]

kiwi system prepare -h | --help
kiwi system prepare --description=<directory> --root=<directory>
  [--allow-existing-root]
  [--clear-cache]
  [--ignore-repos]
  [--ignore-repos-used-for-build]
  [--set-repo=<source,type,alias,priority,imageinclude,package_
↪gpgcheck>]
  [--add-repo=<source,type,alias,priority,imageinclude,package_
↪gpgcheck>...]
  [--add-package=<name>...]
  [--delete-package=<name>...]
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
[--signing-key=<key-file>...]
kiwi system prepare help
```

5.4.2 DESCRIPTION

Create a new image root directory. The prepare step builds a new image root directory from the specified XML description. The specified root directory is the root directory of the new image root system. As the root user you can enter this system via chroot as follows:

```
$ chroot <directory> bash
```

5.4.3 OPTIONS

- add-package=<name>** specify package to add(install). The option can be specified multiple times
- add-repo=<source,type,alias,priority,imageinclude,package_gpgcheck>**
See the kiwi::system::build manual page for further details
- allow-existing-root** allow to re-use an existing image root directory
- clear-cache** delete repository cache for each of the used repositories before installing any package. This is useful if an image build should take and validate the signature of the package from the original repository source for any build. Some package managers unconditionally trust the contents of the cache, which is ok for cache data dedicated to one build but in case of kiwi the cache is shared between multiple image builds on that host for performance reasons.
- delete-package=<name>** specify package to delete. The option can be specified multiple times
- description=<directory>** Path to the kiwi XML description. Inside of that directory there must be at least a config.xml of *.kiwi XML description.
- ignore-repos** Ignore all repository configurations from the XML description. Using that option is usually done with a sequence of --add-repo options otherwise there are no repositories available for the image build which would lead to an error.
- ignore-repos-used-for-build** Works the same way as --ignore-repos except that repository configurations which has the imageonly attribute set to true will not be ignored.
- root=<directory>** Path to create the new root system.

- set-repo=<source,type,alias,priority,imageinclude,package_gpgcheck>** See the `kiwi::system::build` manual page for further details
- signing-key=<key-file>** set the key file to be trusted and imported into the package manager database before performing any operation. This is useful if an image build should take and validate repository and package signatures during build time. This option can be specified multiple times.

5.5 kiwi system update

5.5.1 SYNOPSIS

```
kiwi [global options] service <command> [<args>]

kiwi system update -h | --help
kiwi system update --root=<directory>
    [--add-package=<name>...]
    [--delete-package=<name>...]
kiwi system update help
```

5.5.2 DESCRIPTION

Update a previously prepared image root tree. The update command refreshes the contents of the root directory with potentially new versions of the packages according to the repository setup of the image XML description. In addition the update command also allows to add or remove packages from the image root tree

5.5.3 OPTIONS

- add-package=<name>** specify package to add(install). The option can be specified multiple times
- delete-package=<name>** specify package to delete. The option can be specified multiple times
- root=<directory>** Path to the root directory of the image.

5.6 kiwi system build

5.6.1 SYNOPSIS

```
kiwi [global options] service <command> [<args>]

kiwi system build -h | --help
kiwi system build --description=<directory> --target-dir=<directory>
    [--allow-existing-root]
    [--clear-cache]
    [--ignore-repos]
    [--ignore-repos-used-for-build]
    [--set-repo=<source,type,alias,priority,imageinclude,package_
    ↪gpgcheck>]
    [--add-repo=<source,type,alias,priority,imageinclude,package_
    ↪gpgcheck>...]
    [--add-package=<name>...]
    [--delete-package=<name>...]
    [--signing-key=<key-file>...]
kiwi system build help
```

5.6.2 DESCRIPTION

build an image in one step. The build command combines kiwi's prepare and create steps in order to build an image with just one command call. The build command creates the root directory of the image below `<target-dir>/build/image-root` and if not specified differently writes a log file `<target-dir>/build/image-root.log`. The result image files are created in the specified target-dir.

5.6.3 OPTIONS

- add-package=<name>** specify package to add(install). The option can be specified multiple times
- add-repo=<source,type,alias,priority,imageinclude,package_gpgcheck>**
Add a new repository to the existing repository setup in the XML description. This option can be specified multiple times. For details about the provided option values see the **--set-repo** information below
- allow-existing-root** Allow to use an existing root directory from an earlier build attempt. Use with caution this could cause an inconsistent root tree if the existing contents does not fit to the former image type setup
- clear-cache** delete repository cache for each of the used repositories before installing any package. This is useful if an image build should

take and validate the signature of the package from the original repository source for any build. Some package managers unconditionally trust the contents of the cache, which is ok for cache data dedicated to one build but in case of kiwi the cache is shared between multiple image builds on that host for performance reasons.

--delete-package=<name> specify package to delete. The option can be specified multiple times

--description=<directory> Path to the XML description. This is a directory containing at least one `_config.xml_` or `_*kiwi_` XML file.

--ignore-repos Ignore all repository configurations from the XML description. Using that option is usually done with a sequence of `--add-repo` options otherwise there are no repositories available for the image build which would lead to an error.

--ignore-repos-used-for-build Works the same way as `--ignore-repos` except that repository configurations which has the `imageonly` attribute set to `true` will not be ignored.

--set-repo=<source,type,alias,priority,imageinclude,package_gpgcheck>
Overwrite the first repository entry in the XML description with the provided information:

- **source**

source url, pointing to a package repository which must be in a format supported by the selected package manager. See the `URI_TYPES` section for details about the supported source locators.

- **type**

repository type, could be one of `rpm-md`, `rpm-dir` or `yast2`.

- **alias**

An alias name for the repository. If not specified kiwi calculates an alias name as result from a sha sum. The sha sum is used to uniquely identify the repository, but not very expressive. We recommend to set an expressive and unique alias name.

- **priority**

A number indicating the repository priority. How the value is evaluated depends on the selected package manager. Please refer to the package manager documentation for details about the supported priority ranges and their meaning.

- **imageinclude**

Set to either **true** or **false** to specify if this repository should be part of the system image repository setup or not.

- **package_gpgcheck**

Set to either **true** or **false** to specify if this repository should validate the package signatures.

--signing-key=<key-file> set the key file to be trusted and imported into the package manager database before performing any operation. This is useful if an image build should take and validate repository and package signatures during build time. This option can be specified multiple times

--target-dir=<directory> Path to store the build results.

5.6.4 URI_TYPES

- **http:// | https:// | ftp://**

remote repository delivered via http or ftp protocol.

- **obs://**

Open Buildservice repository. The source data is translated into an http url pointing to <http://download.opensuse.org>.

- **ibs://**

Internal Open Buildservice repository. The source data is translated into an http url pointing to download.suse.de.

- **iso://**

Local iso file. kiwi loop mounts the file and uses the mount point as temporary directory source type

- **dir://**

Local directory

5.7 kiwi system create

5.7.1 SYNOPSIS

```
kiwi [global options] service <command> [<args>]

kiwi system create -h | --help
kiwi system create --root=<directory> --target-dir=<directory>
    [--signing-key=<key-file>...]
kiwi system create help
```

5.7.2 DESCRIPTION

Create an image from a previously prepared image root directory. The kiwi create call is usually issued after a kiwi prepare command and builds the requested image type in the specified target directory

5.7.3 OPTIONS

- root=<directory>** Path to the image root directory. This directory is usually created by the kiwi prepare command. If a directory is used which was not created by kiwi's prepare command, it's important to know that kiwi stores image build metadata below the image/ directory which needs to be present in order to let the create command operate correctly.
- target-dir=<directory>** Path to store the build results.
- signing-key=<key-file>** set the key file to be trusted and imported into the package manager database before performing any operation. This is useful if an image build should take and validate repository and package signatures during build time. In create step this option only affects the boot image. This option can be specified multiple times

5.8 kiwi image resize

5.8.1 SYNOPSIS

```
kiwi [global options] service <command> [<args>]

kiwi image resize -h | --help
kiwi image resize --target-dir=<directory> --size=<size>
    [--root=<directory>]
kiwi image resize help
```

5.8.2 DESCRIPTION

For disk based images, allow to resize the image to a new disk geometry. The additional space is free and not in use by the image. In order to make use of the additional free space a repartition process is required like it is provided by kiwi's oem boot code. Therefore the resize operation is useful for oem image builds most of the time.

5.8.3 OPTIONS

- root=<directory>** The path to the root directory, if not specified kiwi searches the root directory in build/image-root below the specified target directory
- size=<size>** New size of the image. The value is either a size in bytes or can be specified with m=MB or g=GB. Example: 20g
- target-dir=<directory>** Directory containing the kiwi build results

5.9 kiwi image info

5.9.1 SYNOPSIS

```
kiwi [global options] service <command> [<args>]

kiwi image info -h | --help
kiwi image info --description=<directory>
    [--resolve-package-list]
    [--ignore-repos]
    [--add-repo=<source,type,alias,priority>...]
kiwi image info help
```

5.9.2 DESCRIPTION

Provides information about the specified image description. If no specific info option is provided the command just lists basic information about the image which could also be directly obtained by reading the image XML description file. Specifying an extension option like `resolve-package-list` will cause a dependency resolver to run over the list of packages and thus provides more detailed information about the image description.

5.9.3 OPTIONS

- add-repo=<source,type,alias,priority>** Add repository with given source, type, alias and priority.
- description=<directory>** The description must be a directory containing a kiwi XML description and optional metadata files.
- ignore-repos** Ignore all repository configurations from the XML description. Using that option is usually done with a sequence of `--add-repo` options otherwise there are no repositories available for the processing the requested image information which could lead to an error.

--resolve-package-list Solve package dependencies and return a list of all packages including their attributes e.g size, shasum, and more.

CHAPTER 6

Development and Contributing

Hint: Abstract

This document describes the development process of KIWI and how you can be part of it. This description applies for version 9.16.27.

6.1 Using KIWI NG in a Python Project

Hint: Abstract

KIWI is provided as python module under the **kiwi** namespace. It is available for the python 2 and 3 versions. The following description applies for KIWI version 9.16.27.

KIWI NG can also function as a module for other Python projects. The following example demonstrates how to read an existing image description, add a new repository definition and export the modified description on stdout.

```
import sys
import logging

from kiwi.xml_description import XMLDescription
from kiwi.xml_state import XMLState

# Import of log handler only needed if default logging
# setup is not appropriate for the project
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
# from kiwi.logger import log

# By default the logging level is set to DEBUG, which
# can be changed by the following call
# log.setLogLevel(logging.INFO)

# Logging can also be disabled completely
# log.disabled = True

description = XMLDescription('path/to/kiwi/XML/config.xml')

xml_data = description.load()

xml_state = XMLState(
    xml_data=xml_data, profiles=[], build_type='iso'
)

xml_state.add_repository(
    repo_source='http://repo',
    repo_type='rpm-md',
    repo_alias='myrepo',
    repo_prio=99
)

xml_data.export(
    outfile=sys.stdout, level=0
)
```

All classes are written in a way to care for a single responsibility in order to allow for re-use on other use cases. Therefore it is possible to use KIWI NG outside of the main image building scope to manage e.g the setup of loop devices, filesystems, partitions, etc. . .

6.2 API Documentation 9.16.27

6.2.1 Subpackages

kiwi.archive Package

Submodules

kiwi.archive.cpio Module

class kiwi.archive.cpio.**ArchiveCpio** (*filename*)

Bases: object

Extraction/Creation of cpio archives

Parameters **filename** (*string*) – filename to use for archive extraction or creation

create (*source_dir*, *exclude=None*)
Create cpio archive

Parameters

- **source_dir** (*string*) – data source directory
- **exclude** (*list*) – list of excluded items

extract (*dest_dir*)
Extract cpio archive contents

Parameters **dest_dir** (*string*) – target data directory

kiwi.archive.tar Module

class `kiwi.archive.tar.ArchiveTar` (*filename*, *create_from_file_list=True*,
file_list=None)

Bases: `object`

Extraction/Creation of tar archives

The tarfile python module is not used by that class, since it does not provide support for some relevant features in comparison to the GNU tar command (e.g. numeric-owner). Moreover tarfile lacks support for xz compression under Python v2.7.

Parameters

- **filename** (*string*) – filename to use for archive extraction or creation
- **create_from_file_list** (*bool*) – use file list not entire directory to create the archive
- **file_list** (*list*) – list of files and directorie names to archive

append_files (*source_dir*, *files_to_append*, *options=None*)
Append files to an already existing uncompressed tar archive

Parameters

- **source_dir** (*string*) – data source directory
- **files_to_append** (*list*) – list of items to append
- **options** (*list*) – custom options

create (*source_dir*, *exclude=None*, *options=None*)
Create uncompressed tar archive

Parameters

- **source_dir** (*string*) – data source directory
- **exclude** (*list*) – list of excluded items

- **options** (*list*) – custom creation options

create_gnu_gzip_compressed (*source_dir*, *exclude=None*)

Create gzip compressed tar archive

Parameters

- **source_dir** (*string*) – data source directory
- **exclude** (*list*) – list of excluded items

create_xz_compressed (*source_dir*, *exclude=None*, *options=None*,
xz_options=None)

Create XZ compressed tar archive

Parameters

- **source_dir** (*string*) – data source directory
- **exclude** (*list*) – list of excluded items
- **options** (*list*) – custom tar creation options
- **xz_options** (*list*) – custom xz compression options

extract (*dest_dir*)

Extract tar archive contents

Parameters **dest_dir** (*string*) – target data directory

Module Contents

kiwi.boot Package

Subpackages

kiwi.boot.image Package

Submodules

kiwi.boot.image.base Module

class kiwi.boot.image.base.**BootImageBase** (*xml_state*, *target_dir*,
root_dir=None, *sign-
ing_keys=None*)

Bases: object

Base class for boot image(initrd) task

Parameters

- **xml_state** (*object*) – Instance of XMLState
- **target_dir** (*string*) – target dir to store the initrd

- **root_dir** (*string*) – system image root directory
- **signing_keys** (*list*) – list of package signing keys

create_initrd (*mbrid=None, basename=None*)

Implements creation of the initrd

Parameters

- **mbrid** (*object*) – instance of ImageIdentifier
- **basename** (*string*) – base initrd file name

Implementation in specialized boot image class

disable_cleanup ()

Deactivate cleanup(deletion) of boot root directory

dump (*filename*)

Pickle dump this instance to a file. If the object dump is requested the destructor code will also be disabled in order to preserve the generated data

Parameters filename (*string*) – file path name

enable_cleanup ()

Activate cleanup(deletion) of boot root directory

get_boot_description_directory ()

Provide path to the boot image XML description

Returns path name

Return type str

get_boot_names ()

Provides kernel and initrd names for this boot image

Implementation in specialized boot image class

import_system_description_elements ()

Copy information from the system image relevant to create the boot image to the boot image state XML description

include_file (*filename*)

Include file to boot image

For kiwi boot images this is done by adding package or archive definitions with the bootinclude attribute. Thus for kiwi boot images the method is a noop

Parameters filename (*string*) – file path name

is_prepared ()

Check if initrd system is prepared.

Returns True or False

Return type bool

load_boot_xml_description()

Load the boot image description referenced by the system image description boot attribute

post_init()

Post initialization method

Implementation in specialized boot image class

prepare()

Prepare new root system to create initrd from. Implementation is only needed if there is no other root system available

Implementation in specialized boot image class

kiwi.boot.image.dracut Module

```
class kiwi.boot.image.dracut.BootImageDracut (xml_state,  
                                              target_dir,  
                                              root_dir=None,  
                                              sign-  
                                              ing_keys=None)
```

Bases: *kiwi.boot.image.base.BootImageBase*

Implements creation of dracut boot(initrd) images.

create_initrd(*mbrid=None, basename=None*)

Call dracut as chroot operation to create the initrd and move the result into the image build target directory

Parameters

- **mbrid**(*object*) – unused
- **basename**(*string*) – base initrd file name

get_boot_names()

Provides kernel and initrd names for kiwi boot image

Returns

Contains boot_names_type tuple

```
boot_names_type(  
    kernel_name='INSTALLED_KERNEL',  
    initrd_name='DRACUT_OUTPUT_NAME'  
)
```

Return type tuple

include_file(*filename*)

Include file to dracut boot image

Parameters **filename**(*string*) – file path name

post_init()

Post initialization method

Initialize empty list of dracut caller options

prepare()

Prepare dracut caller environment

- Create kiwi .profile environment to be included in dracut initrd
- Setup machine_id(s) to be generic and rebuild by dracut on boot

kiwi.boot.image.builtin_kiwi Module

```
class kiwi.boot.image.builtin_kiwi.BootImageKiwi (xml_state,  
                                                target_dir,  
                                                root_dir=None,  
                                                sign-  
                                                ing_keys=None)
```

Bases: *kiwi.boot.image.base.BootImageBase*

Implements preparation and creation of kiwi boot(initrd) images

The kiwi initrd is a customized first boot initrd which allows to control the first boot an appliance. The kiwi initrd replaces itself after first boot by the result of dracut.

create_initrd(*mbrid=None, basename=None*)

Create initrd from prepared boot system tree and compress the result

Parameters

- **mbrid**(*object*) – instance of ImageIdentifier
- **basename**(*string*) – base initrd file name

get_boot_names()

Provides kernel and initrd names for kiwi boot image

Returns

Contains boot_names_type tuple

```
boot_names_type(  
    kernel_name='linux.vmx',  
    initrd_name='initrd.vmx'  
)
```

Return type tuple

post_init()

Post initialization method

Creates custom directory to prepare the boot image root filesystem which is a separate image to create the initrd from

prepare()

Prepare new root system suitable to create a kiwi initrd from it

Module Contents

class `kiwi.boot.image.BootImage`

Bases: `object`

BootImage Factory

Parameters

- **xml_state** (*object*) – Instance of `XMLState`
- **target_dir** (*string*) – target dir to store the initrd
- **root_dir** (*string*) – system image root directory
- **signing_keys** (*list*) – list of package signing keys

Module Contents

kiwi.bootloader Package

Subpackages

kiwi.bootloader.config Package

Submodules

kiwi.bootloader.config.base Module

class `kiwi.bootloader.config.base.BootLoaderConfigBase` (*xml_state*,

root_dir,

cus-

tom_args=None)

Bases: `object`

Base class for bootloader configuration

Parameters

- **xml_state** (*object*) – instance of `XMLState`
- **root_dir** (*string*) – root directory path name
- **custom_args** (*dict*) – custom bootloader arguments dictionary

create_efi_path (*in_sub_dir='boot/efi'*)

Create standard EFI boot directory structure

Parameters **in_sub_dir** (*string*) – toplevel directory

Returns Full qualified EFI boot path

Return type str

failsafe_boot_entry_requested()

Check if a failsafe boot entry is requested

Returns True or False

Return type bool

get_boot_cmdline (*uuid=None*)

Boot commandline arguments passed to the kernel

Parameters **uuid** (*string*) – boot device UUID

Returns kernel boot arguments

Return type str

get_boot_path (*target='disk'*)

Bootloader lookup path on boot device

If the bootloader reads the data it needs to boot, it does that from the configured boot device. Depending if that device is an extra boot partition or the root partition or or based on a non standard filesystem like a btrfs snapshot, the path name varies

Parameters **target** (*string*) – target name: disk|iso

Returns path name

Return type str

get_boot_theme ()

Bootloader Theme name

Returns theme name

Return type str

get_boot_timeout_seconds ()

Bootloader timeout in seconds

If no timeout is specified the default timeout applies

Returns timeout seconds

Return type int

get_gfxmode (*target*)

Graphics mode according to bootloader target

Bootloaders which support a graphics mode can be configured to run graphics in a specific resolution and colors. There is no standard for this setup which causes kiwi to create a mapping from the kernel vesa mode number to the corresponding bootloader graphics mode setup

Parameters **target** (*string*) – bootloader name

Returns boot graphics mode

Return type str

get_install_image_boot_default (*loader=None*)

Provide the default boot menu entry identifier for install images

The install image can be configured to provide more than one boot menu entry. Menu entries configured are:

- [0] Boot From Hard Disk
- [1] Install
- [2] Failsafe Install

The installboot attribute controls which of these are used by default. If not specified the boot from hard disk entry will be the default. Depending on the specified loader type either an entry number or name will be returned.

Parameters **loader** (*string*) – bootloader name

Returns menu name or id

Return type str

get_menu_entry_install_title ()

Prefixed menu entry title for install images

If no displayname is specified in the image description, the menu title is constructed from the image name

Returns title text

Return type str

get_menu_entry_title (*plain=False*)

Prefixed menu entry title

If no displayname is specified in the image description, the menu title is constructed from the image name and build type

Parameters **plain** (*bool*) – indicate to add built type into title text

Returns title text

Return type str

post_init (*custom_args*)

Post initialization method

Store custom arguments by default

Parameters **custom_args** (*dict*) – custom bootloader arguments

quote_title (*name*)

Quote special characters in the title name

Not all characters can be displayed correctly in the bootloader environment. Therefore a quoting is required

Parameters **name** (*string*) – title name

Returns quoted text

Return type str

setup_disk_boot_images (*boot_uuid*, *lookup_path=None*)

Create bootloader images for disk boot

Some bootloaders requires to build a boot image the bootloader can load from a specific offset address or from a standardized path on a filesystem.

Parameters

- **boot_uuid** (*string*) – boot device UUID
- **lookup_path** (*string*) – custom module lookup path

Implementation in specialized bootloader class required

setup_disk_image_config (*boot_uuid*, *root_uuid*, *hypervisor*, *kernel*, *initrd*, *boot_options*)

Create boot config file to boot from disk.

Parameters

- **boot_uuid** (*string*) – boot device UUID
- **root_uuid** (*string*) – root device UUID
- **hypervisor** (*string*) – hypervisor name
- **kernel** (*string*) – kernel name
- **initrd** (*string*) – initrd name
- **boot_options** (*string*) – kernel options as string

Implementation in specialized bootloader class required

setup_install_boot_images (*mbrid*, *lookup_path=None*)

Create bootloader images for ISO boot an install media

Parameters

- **mbrid** (*string*) – mbrid file name on boot device
- **lookup_path** (*string*) – custom module lookup path

Implementation in specialized bootloader class required

setup_install_image_config (*mbrid*, *hypervisor*, *kernel*, *initrd*)

Create boot config file to boot from install media in EFI mode.

Parameters

- **mbrid** (*string*) – mbrid file name on boot device
- **hypervisor** (*string*) – hypervisor name
- **kernel** (*string*) – kernel name
- **initrd** (*string*) – initrd name

Implementation in specialized bootloader class required

setup_live_boot_images (*mbrid*, *lookup_path=None*)

Create bootloader images for ISO boot a live ISO image

Parameters

- **mbrid** (*string*) – mbrid file name on boot device
- **lookup_path** (*string*) – custom module lookup path

Implementation in specialized bootloader class required

setup_live_image_config (*mbrid*, *hypervisor*, *kernel*, *initrd*)

Create boot config file to boot live ISO image in EFI mode.

Parameters

- **mbrid** (*string*) – mbrid file name on boot device
- **hypervisor** (*string*) – hypervisor name
- **kernel** (*string*) – kernel name
- **initrd** (*string*) – initrd name

Implementation in specialized bootloader class required

setup_sysconfig_bootloader ()

Create or update etc/sysconfig/bootloader by parameters required according to the bootloader setup

Implementation in specialized bootloader class required

write ()

Write config data to config file.

Implementation in specialized bootloader class required

kiwi.bootloader.config.grub2 Module

```
class kiwi.bootloader.config.grub2.BootLoaderConfigGrub2 (xml_state,  
                                                         root_dir,  
                                                         cus-  
                                                         tom_args=None)
```

Bases: *kiwi.bootloader.config.base.BootLoaderConfigBase*

grub2 bootloader configuration.

post_init (*custom_args*)

grub2 post initialization method

Parameters **custom_args** (*dict*) – Contains grub config arguments

{ 'grub_directory_name' : 'grub|grub2' }

setup_disk_boot_images (*boot_uuid*, *lookup_path=None*)

Create/Provide grub2 boot images and metadata

In order to boot from the disk grub2 modules, images and theme data needs to be created and provided at the correct place in the filesystem

Parameters

- **boot_uuid** (*string*) – boot device UUID
- **lookup_path** (*string*) – custom module lookup path

setup_disk_image_config (*boot_uuid*, *root_uuid*, *hypervisor='xen.gz'*,
kernel='linux.vmx', *initrd='initrd.vmx'*,
boot_options="")

Create the grub.cfg in memory from a template suitable to boot from a disk image

Parameters

- **boot_uuid** (*string*) – boot device UUID
- **root_uuid** (*string*) – root device UUID
- **hypervisor** (*string*) – hypervisor name
- **kernel** (*string*) – kernel name
- **initrd** (*string*) – initrd name
- **boot_options** (*string*) – kernel options as string

setup_install_boot_images (*mbrid*, *lookup_path=None*)

Create/Provide grub2 boot images and metadata

In order to boot from the ISO grub2 modules, images and theme data needs to be created and provided at the correct place on the iso filesystem

Parameters

- **mbrid** (*string*) – mbrid file name on boot device
- **lookup_path** (*string*) – custom module lookup path

setup_install_image_config (*mbrid*, *hypervisor='xen.gz'*, *kernel='linux'*, *initrd='initrd'*)

Create grub2 config file to boot from an ISO install image

Parameters

- **mbrid** (*string*) – mbrid file name on boot device
- **hypervisor** (*string*) – hypervisor name
- **kernel** (*string*) – kernel name
- **initrd** (*string*) – initrd name

setup_live_boot_images (*mbrid*, *lookup_path=None*)

Create/Provide grub2 boot images and metadata

Calls setup_install_boot_images because no different action required

setup_live_image_config(*mbrid*, *hypervisor*='xen.gz', *kernel*='linux',
initrd='initrd')

Create grub2 config file to boot a live media ISO image

Parameters

- **mbrid**(*string*) – mbrid file name on boot device
- **hypervisor**(*string*) – hypervisor name
- **kernel**(*string*) – kernel name
- **initrd**(*string*) – initrd name

setup_sysconfig_bootloader()

Create or update etc/sysconfig/bootloader by the following parameters required according to the grub2 bootloader setup

- **LOADER_TYPE**
- **LOADER_LOCATION**
- **DEFAULT_APPEND**
- **FAILSAFE_APPEND**

write()

Write grub.cfg and etc/default/grub file

kiwi.bootloader.config.isolinux Module

class kiwi.bootloader.config.isolinux.**BootLoaderConfigIsoLinux**(*xml_state*,
root_dir,
custom_args=None)

Bases: *kiwi.bootloader.config.base.BootLoaderConfigBase*

isolinux bootloader configuration.

post_init(*custom_args*)

isolinux post initialization method

Parameters **custom_args** (*dict*) – custom isolinux config arguments

setup_install_boot_images(*mbrid*, *lookup_path*=None)

Provide isolinux boot metadata

The mbrid parameter is not used, because only isolinux loader binary and possible theming files are copied

Parameters

- **mbrid**(*string*) – unused
- **lookup_path**(*string*) – custom module lookup path

setup_install_image_config(*mbrid*, *hypervisor*='xen.gz', *kernel*='linux', *initrd*='initrd')

Create isolinux.cfg in memory from a template suitable to boot from an ISO image in BIOS boot mode

Parameters

- **mbrid**(*string*) – mbrid file name on boot device
- **hypervisor**(*string*) – hypervisor name
- **kernel**(*string*) – kernel name
- **initrd**(*string*) – initrd name

setup_live_boot_images(*mbrid*, *lookup_path*=None)

Provide isolinux boot metadata

Calls setup_install_boot_images because no different action required

setup_live_image_config(*mbrid*, *hypervisor*='xen.gz', *kernel*='linux', *initrd*='initrd')

Create isolinux.cfg in memory from a template suitable to boot a live system from an ISO image in BIOS boot mode

Parameters

- **mbrid**(*string*) – mbrid file name on boot device
- **hypervisor**(*string*) – hypervisor name
- **kernel**(*string*) – kernel name
- **initrd**(*string*) – initrd name

write()

Write isolinux.cfg and isolinux.msg file

kiwi.bootloader.config.zipl Module

class `kiwi.bootloader.config.zipl.BootLoaderConfigZipl`(*xml_state*,
root_dir,
custom_args=None)

Bases: `kiwi.bootloader.config.base.BootLoaderConfigBase`

zipl bootloader configuration.

post_init(*custom_args*)

zipl post initialization method

Parameters **custom_args**(*dict*) – Contains zipl config arguments

{ 'targetbase' : 'device_name' }

setup_disk_boot_images(*boot_uuid*, *lookup_path*=None)

On s390 no bootloader images needs to be created

Thus this method does nothing

Parameters

- **boot_uuid** (*string*) – boot device UUID
- **lookup_path** (*string*) – custom module lookup path

setup_disk_image_config (*boot_uuid=None, root_uuid=None, hypervisor=None, kernel='linux.vmx', initrd='initrd.vmx', boot_options=""*)

Create the zipl config in memory from a template suitable to boot from a disk image.

Parameters

- **boot_uuid** (*string*) – unused
- **root_uuid** (*string*) – unused
- **hypervisor** (*string*) – unused
- **kernel** (*string*) – kernel name
- **initrd** (*string*) – initrd name
- **boot_options** (*string*) – kernel options as string

write ()

Write zipl config file

Module Contents

class `kiwi.bootloader.config.BootLoaderConfig`

Bases: `object`

BootLoaderConfig factory

Parameters

- **name** (*string*) – bootloader name
- **xml_state** (*object*) – instance of `XMLState`
- **root_dir** (*string*) – root directory path name
- **custom_args** (*dict*) – custom bootloader config arguments dictionary

kiwi.bootloader.install Package

Submodules

`kiwi.bootloader.install.base` Module

```
class kiwi.bootloader.install.base.BootLoaderInstallBase(root_dir,  
                                                         de-  
                                                         vice_provider,  
                                                         cus-  
                                                         tom_args=None)
```

Bases: `object`

Base class for bootloader installation on device

Parameters

- **`root_dir`** (*string*) – root directory path name
- **`device_provider`** (*object*) – instance of `DeviceProvider`
- **`custom_args`** (*dict*) – custom arguments dictionary

`install()`

Install bootloader on `self.device`

Implementation in specialized bootloader install class required

`install_required()`

Check if bootloader needs to be installed

Implementation in specialized bootloader install class required

`post_init(custom_args)`

Post initialization method

Store custom arguments by default

Parameters **`custom_args`** (*dict*) – custom bootloader arguments

`kiwi.bootloader.install.grub2` Module

```
class kiwi.bootloader.install.grub2.BootLoaderInstallGrub2(root_dir,  
                                                            de-  
                                                            vice_provider,  
                                                            cus-  
                                                            tom_args=None)
```

Bases: `kiwi.bootloader.install.base.BootLoaderInstallBase`

grub2 bootloader installation

`install()`

Install bootloader on disk device

`install_required()`

Check if grub2 has to be installed

Take architecture and firmware setup into account to check if bootloader code in a boot record is required

Returns True or False

Return type bool

post_init (*custom_args*)
grub2 post initialization method

Parameters **custom_args** (*dict*) – Contains custom grub2 boot-loader arguments

```
{
    'target_removable': bool,
    'system_volumes': list_of_volumes,
    'firmware': FirmWare_instance,
    'efi_device': string,
    'boot_device': string,
    'root_device': string
}
```

kiwi.bootloader.install.zipl Module

class `kiwi.bootloader.install.zipl.BootLoaderInstallZipl` (*root_dir*,
de-
vice_provider,
cus-
tom_args=None)

Bases: `kiwi.bootloader.install.base.BootLoaderInstallBase`

zipl bootloader installation

install ()
Install bootloader on self.device

install_required ()
Check if zipl has to be installed

Always required

Returns True

Return type bool

post_init (*custom_args*)
zipl post initialization method

Parameters **custom_args** (*dict*) – Contains custom zipl bootloader arguments

```
{ 'boot_device': string }
```

Module Contents

class `kiwi.bootloader.install.BootLoaderInstall`

Bases: `object`

BootLoaderInstall Factory

Parameters

- **name** (*string*) – bootloader name
- **root_dir** (*string*) – root directory path name
- **device_provider** (*object*) – instance of `DeviceProvider`
- **custom_args** (*dict*) – custom arguments dictionary

`kiwi.bootloader.template` Package

Submodules

`kiwi.bootloader.template.grub2` Module

class `kiwi.bootloader.template.grub2.BootLoaderTemplateGrub2`

Bases: `object`

grub2 configuraton file templates

get_disk_template (*failsafe=True, hybrid=True, terminal='gfxterm'*)

Bootloader configuration template for disk image

Parameters

- **failsafe** (*bool*) – with failsafe `true`/`false`
- **hybrid** (*bool*) – with hybrid `true`/`false`
- **terminal** (*string*) – output terminal name

Returns instance of `Template`

Return type `Template`

get_install_template (*failsafe=True, hybrid=True, terminal='gfxterm'*)

Bootloader configuration template for install media

Parameters

- **failsafe** (*bool*) – with failsafe `true`/`false`
- **hybrid** (*bool*) – with hybrid `true`/`false`
- **terminal** (*string*) – output terminal name

Returns instance of `Template`

Return type `Template`

get_iso_template (*failsafe=True, hybrid=True, terminal='gfxterm', check-iso=False*)

Bootloader configuration template for live ISO media

Parameters

- **failsafe** (*bool*) – with failsafe true/false
- **hybrid** (*bool*) – with hybrid true/false
- **terminal** (*string*) – output terminal name

Returns instance of `Template`

Return type `Template`

get_multiboot_disk_template (*failsafe=True, terminal='gfxterm'*)

Bootloader configuration template for disk image with hypervisor, e.g Xen dom0

Parameters

- **failsafe** (*bool*) – with failsafe true/false
- **terminal** (*string*) – output terminal name

Returns instance of `Template`

Return type `Template`

get_multiboot_install_template (*failsafe=True, terminal='gfxterm'*)

Bootloader configuration template for install media with hypervisor, e.g Xen dom0

Parameters

- **failsafe** (*bool*) – with failsafe true/false
- **terminal** (*string*) – output terminal name

Returns instance of `Template`

Return type `Template`

get_multiboot_iso_template (*failsafe=True, terminal='gfxterm', check-iso=False*)

Bootloader configuration template for live ISO media with hypervisor, e.g Xen dom0

Parameters

- **failsafe** (*bool*) – with failsafe true/false
- **terminal** (*string*) – output terminal name

Returns instance of `Template`

Return type `Template`

kiwi.bootloader.template.isolinux Module**class** `kiwi.bootloader.template.isolinux.BootLoaderTemplateIsoLinux`Bases: `object`**isolinux configuraton file templates****get_install_message_template()**

Bootloader template for text message file in install mode. isolinux displays this as menu if no graphics mode can be initialized

Returns instance of `Template`**Return type** `Template`**get_install_template** (*failsafe=True, with_theme=True, terminal=None*)

Bootloader configuration template for install media

Parameters

- **failsafe** (*bool*) – with failsafe true/false
- **with_theme** (*bool*) – with graphics theme true/false

Returns instance of `Template`**Return type** `Template`**get_message_template()**

Bootloader template for text message file. isolinux displays this as menu if no graphics mode can be initialized

Returns instance of `Template`**Return type** `Template`**get_multiboot_install_template** (*failsafe=True, with_theme=True, terminal=None*)

Bootloader configuration template for install media with hypervisor, e.g Xen dom0

Parameters

- **failsafe** (*bool*) – with failsafe true/false
- **with_theme** (*bool*) – with graphics theme true/false

Returns instance of `Template`**Return type** `Template`**get_multiboot_template** (*failsafe=True, with_theme=True, terminal=None, checkiso=False*)

Bootloader configuration template for live media with hypervisor, e.g Xen dom0

Parameters

- **failsafe** (*bool*) – with failsafe true/false
- **with_theme** (*bool*) – with graphics theme true/false

Returns instance of `Template`

Return type `Template`

get_template (*failsafe=True, with_theme=True, terminal=None, check-iso=False*)

Bootloader configuration template for live media

Parameters

- **failsafe** (*bool*) – with failsafe true/false
- **with_theme** (*bool*) – with graphics theme true/false

Returns instance of `Template`

Return type `Template`

`kiwi.bootloader.template.zipl` Module

class `kiwi.bootloader.template.zipl.BootLoaderTemplateZipl`

Bases: `object`

zipl configuraton file templates

get_template (*failsafe=True*)

Bootloader configuration template for disk boot

Parameters **failsafe** (*bool*) – with failsafe true/false

Returns instance of `Template`

Return type `Template`

Module Contents

Module Contents

`kiwi.builder` Package

Submodules

`kiwi.builder.archive` Module

class `kiwi.builder.archive.ArchiveBuilder` (*xml_state, target_dir, root_dir, custom_args=None*)

Bases: `object`

Root archive image builder

Parameters

- **xml_state** (*object*) – Instance of XMLState
- **target_dir** (*str*) – target directory path name
- **root_dir** (*str*) – root directory path name
- **custom_args** (*dict*) – Custom processing arguments defined as hash keys: * xz_options: string of XZ compression parameters

create ()

Create a root archive tarball

Build a simple XZ compressed root tarball from the image root tree

Image types which triggers this builder are:

- image="tbz"

Returns result

Return type instance of Result

kiwi.builder.container Module

```
class kiwi.builder.container.ContainerBuilder (xml_state,  
                                              target_dir,  
                                              root_dir,      cus-  
                                              tom_args=None)
```

Bases: object

Container image builder

Parameters

- **xml_state** (*object*) – Instance of XMLState
- **target_dir** (*str*) – target directory path name
- **root_dir** (*str*) – root directory path name
- **custom_args** (*dict*) – Custom processing arguments defined as hash keys: * xz_options: string of XZ compression parameters

create ()

Builds a container image which is usually a tarball including container specific metadata.

Image types which triggers this builder are:

- image="docker"

Returns result

Return type instance of Result

kiwi.builder.disk Module

class `kiwi.builder.disk.DiskBuilder` (*xml_state*, *target_dir*, *root_dir*,
custom_args=None)

Bases: `object`

Disk image builder

Parameters

- **xml_state** (*object*) – Instance of `XMLState`
- **target_dir** (*str*) – Target directory path name
- **root_dir** (*str*) – Root directory path name
- **custom_args** (*dict*) – Custom processing arguments defined as hash keys: * **signing_keys**: list of package signing keys * **xz_options**: string of XZ compression parameters

append_unpartitioned_space ()

Extends the raw disk if an unpartitioned area is specified

create ()

Build a bootable disk image and optional installation image The installation image is a bootable hybrid ISO image which embeds the disk image and an image installer

Image types which triggers this builder are:

- **image**="oem"
- **image**="vmx"

Returns `result`

Return type `instance of Result`

create_disk ()

Build a bootable raw disk image

Raises

- ***KiwiInstallMediaError*** – if install media is required and image type is not oem
- ***KiwiVolumeManagerSetupError*** – root overlay at the same time volumes are defined is not supported

Returns `result`

Return type `instance of Result`

create_disk_format (*result_instance*)

Create a bootable disk format from a previously created raw disk image

Parameters **result_instance** (*object*) – instance of `Result`

Returns `updated result_instance`

Return type instance of `Result`

create_install_media (*result_instance*)

Build an installation image. The installation image is a bootable hybrid ISO image which embeds the raw disk image and an image installer

Parameters **result_instance** (*object*) – instance of `Result`

Returns updated `result_instance` with installation media

Return type instance of `Result`

`kiwi.builder.filesystem` Module

```
class kiwi.builder.filesystem.FileSystemBuilder (xml_state,  
                                                target_dir,  
                                                root_dir)
```

Bases: `object`

Filesystem image builder

Parameters

- **label** (*str*) – filesystem label
- **root_dir** (*str*) – root directory path name
- **target_dir** (*str*) – target directory path name
- **requested_image_type** (*str*) – configured image type
- **requested_filesystem** (*str*) – requested filesystem name
- **system_setup** (*object*) – instance of `SystemSetup`
- **filename** (*str*) – file name of the filesystem image
- **blocksize** (*int*) – configured disk blocksize
- **filesystem_setup** (*object*) – instance of `FileSystemSetup`
- **filesystems_no_device_node** (*object*) – List of filesystems which are created from a data tree and do not require a block device e.g loop
- **filesystem_custom_parameters** (*dict*) – Configured custom filesystem mount and creation arguments
- **result** (*object*) – instance of `Result`

create ()

Build a mountable filesystem image

Image types which triggers this builder are:

- `image="ext2"`

- image="ext3"
- image="ext4"
- image="btrfs"
- image="xfs"

Returns result

Return type instance of Result

kiwi.builder.install Module

```
class kiwi.builder.install.InstallImageBuilder(xml_state,  
                                              root_dir,  
                                              target_dir,  
                                              boot_image_task,  
                                              cus-  
                                              tom_args=None)
```

Bases: object

Installation image builder

Parameters

- **xml_state** (*object*) – instance of XMLState
- **root_dir** (*str*) – system image root directory
- **target_dir** (*str*) – target directory path name
- **boot_image_task** (*object*) – instance of BootImage
- **custom_args** (*dict*) – Custom processing arguments defined as hash keys: * xz_options: string of XZ compression parameters

create_install_iso()

Create an install ISO from the disk_image as hybrid ISO bootable via legacy BIOS, EFI and as disk from Stick

Image types which triggers this builder are:

- installiso="true|false"
- installstick="true|false"

create_install_pxe_archive()

Create an oem install tar archive suitable for installing a disk image via the network using the PXE boot protocol. The archive contains:

- The raw system image xz compressed
- The raw system image checksum metadata file
- The append file template for the boot server

- The system image initrd for kexec
- The install initrd
- The kernel

Image types which triggers this builder are:

- `installpxe="true|false"`

kiwi.builder.live Module

```
class kiwi.builder.live.LiveImageBuilder(xml_state, target_dir, root_dir, custom_args=None)
```

Bases: `object`

Live image builder

Parameters

- **xml_state** (*object*) – instance of `XMLState`
- **target_dir** (*str*) – target directory path name
- **root_dir** (*str*) – root directory path name
- **custom_args** (*dict*) – Custom processing arguments

create()

Build a bootable hybrid live ISO image

Image types which triggers this builder are:

- `image="iso"`

Raises `KiwiLiveBootImageError` – if no kernel or hipervisor is found in boot image tree

Returns `result`

Return type `instance of Result`

kiwi.builder.pxe Module

```
class kiwi.builder.pxe.PxeBuilder(xml_state, target_dir, root_dir, custom_args=None)
```

Bases: `object`

Filesystem based PXE image builder.

Parameters

- **xml_state** (*object*) – instance of `XMLState`
- **target_dir** (*str*) – target directory path name

- **root_dir** (*str*) – system image root directory
- **custom_args** (*dict*) – Custom processing arguments defined as hash keys: * signing_keys: list of package signing keys * xz_options: string of XZ compression parameters

create()

Build a pxe image set consisting out of a boot image(initrd) plus its appropriate kernel files and the root filesystem image with a checksum. The result can be used within the kiwi PXE boot infrastructure

Image types which triggers this builder are:

- image="pxe"

Raises *KiwiPxeBootImageError* – if no kernel or hipervisor is found in boot image tree

Returns result

Return type instance of *Result*

Module Contents

class *kiwi.builder.ImageBuilder*

Bases: *object*

image builder factory

kiwi.container Package

Subpackages

kiwi.container.setup Package

Submodules

kiwi.container.setup.base Module

class *kiwi.container.setup.base.ContainerSetupBase* (*root_dir*,
cus-
tom_args=None)

Bases: *object*

Base class for setting up the root system to create a container image from for e.g docker. The methods here are generic to linux systems following the FHS standard and modern enough e.g based on systemd

Attributes

- **root_dir** root directory path name
- **custom_args** dict of custom arguments

create_fstab()

Container boot mount setup

Initialize an empty fstab file, mount processes in a container are controlled by the container infrastructure

deactivate_bootloader_setup()

Container bootloader setup

Tell the system there is no bootloader configuration it needs to care for. A container does not boot

deactivate_root_filesystem_check()

Container filesystem check setup

The root filesystem of a container could be an overlay or a mapped device. In any case it should not be checked for consistency as this is should be done by the container infrastructure

deactivate_systemd_service(name)

Container system services setup

Init systems among others also controls services which starts at boot time. A container does not really boot. Thus some services needs to be deactivated

Parameters **name** (*string*) – systemd service name

get_container_name()

Container name

Returns name

Return type str

post_init(custom_args)

Post initialization method

Implementation in specialized container setup class

Parameters **custom_args** (*list*) – unused

setup()

Setup container metadata

Implementation in specialized bootloader class required

setup_root_console()

Container console setup

/dev/console should be allowed to login by root

setup_static_device_nodes()

Container device node setup

Without subsystems like udev running in a container it is required to provide a set of device nodes to let the system in the container function correctly. This is done by syncing the host system nodes to the container. That this will also create device nodes which are not necessarily present in the container later is a known limitation of this method and considered harmless

kiwi.container.setup.docker Module

```
class kiwi.container.setup.docker.ContainerSetupDocker (root_dir,
                                                    cus-
                                                    tom_args=None)

    Bases: kiwi.container.setup.oci.ContainerSetupOCI

    Docker container setup
```

Module Contents

```
class kiwi.container.setup.ContainerSetup
    Bases: object

    container setup factory
```

Submodules

kiwi.container.docker Module

```
class kiwi.container.docker.ContainerImageDocker (root_dir, cus-
                                                    tom_args=None)

    Bases: kiwi.container.oci.ContainerImageOCI

    Create docker container from a root directory

    pack_image_to_file (filename)
        Packs the given oci image into the given filename.

        Parameters filename (string) – file name of the resulting packed
            image
```

kiwi.container.oci Module

```
class kiwi.container.oci.ContainerImageOCI (root_dir,          cus-
                                                    tom_args=None)

    Bases: object

    Create oci container from a root directory

    Parameters

    • root_dir (string) – root directory path name
```

- **custom_args** (*dict*) – Custom processing arguments defined as hash keys:

Example

```
{
    'container_name': 'name',
    'container_tag': '1.0',
    'additional_tags': ['current', 'foobar'],
    'entry_command': [
        '-config.entrypoint=/bin/bash',
        '-config.entrypoint=-x'
    ],
    'entry_subcommand': [
        '-config.cmd=ls',
        '-config.cmd=-l'
    ],
    'maintainer': ['-author=tux'],
    'user': ['-config.user=root'],
    'workingdir': ['-config.workingdir=/root'],
    'expose_ports': [
        '-config.exposedports=80',
        '-config.exposedports=42'
    ],
    'volumes': [
        '-config.volume=/var/log',
        '-config.volume=/tmp'
    ],
    'environment': ['-config.env=PATH=/bin'],
    'labels': ['-config.label=name=value']
}
```

create (*filename*, *base_image*)

Create compressed oci system container tar archive

Parameters

- **filename** (*string*) – archive file name
- **base_image** (*string*) – archive used as a base image

pack_image_to_file (*filename*)

Packs the oci image into the given filename.

Parameters filename (*string*) – file name of the resulting packed image

Module Contents

class `kiwi.container.ContainerImage`

Bases: `object`

Container Image factory

Parameters

- **name** (*string*) – container system name
- **root_dir** (*string*) – root directory path name
- **custom_args** (*dict*) – custom arguments

kiwi.filesystem Package

Submodules

kiwi.filesystem.base Module

```
class kiwi.filesystem.base.FileSystemBase (device_provider,  
                                           root_dir=None,      cus-  
                                           tom_args=None)
```

Bases: object

Implements base class for filesystem interface

Parameters

- **device_provider** (*object*) – Instance of a class based on DeviceProvider required for filesystems which needs a block device for creation. In most cases the DeviceProvider is a LoopDevice
- **root_dir** (*string*) – root directory path name
- **custom_args** (*dict*) – custom filesystem arguments

create_on_device (*label=None*)
Create filesystem on block device

Implement in specialized filesystem class for filesystems which requires a block device for creation, e.g ext4.

Parameters **label** (*string*) – label name

create_on_file (*filename, label=None, exclude=None*)
Create filesystem from root data tree

Implement in specialized filesystem class for filesystems which requires a data tree for creation, e.g squashfs.

Parameters

- **filename** (*string*) – result file path name
- **label** (*string*) – label name
- **exclude** (*list*) – list of exclude dirs/files

post_init (*custom_args*)

Store dictionary of custom arguments if not empty. This overrides the default custom argument hash

```
{
    'create_options': ['option'],
    'mount_options': ['option'],
    'meta_data': {
        'key': 'value'
    }
}
```

Copy root data tree into filesystem

kiwi.filesystem.btrfs Module

Implements creation of btrfs filesystem

Create btrfs filesystem on block device

kiwi.filesystem.clicfs Module

Implements creation of clicfs filesystem

Create clicfs filesystem from data tree

There is no option to exclude data from clicfs thus this parameter is not used

- **filename** (*string*) – result file path name
- **label** (*string*) – unused
- **exclude** (*list*) – unused

post_init (*custom_args=None*)

Post initialization method

Initialize temporary container_dir directory to store clicfs embeded filesystem

Parameters **custom_args** (*dict*) – unused

kiwi.filesystem.ext2 Module

```
class kiwi.filesystem.ext2.FileSystemExt2 (device_provider,  
                                           root_dir=None,      cus-  
                                           tom_args=None)
```

Bases: *kiwi.filesystem.base.FileSystemBase*

Implements creation of ext2 filesystem

create_on_device (*label=None*)

Create ext2 filesystem on block device

Parameters **label** (*string*) – label name

kiwi.filesystem.ext3 Module

```
class kiwi.filesystem.ext3.FileSystemExt3 (device_provider,  
                                           root_dir=None,      cus-  
                                           tom_args=None)
```

Bases: *kiwi.filesystem.base.FileSystemBase*

Implements creation of ext3 filesystem

create_on_device (*label=None*)

Create ext3 filesystem on block device

Parameters **label** (*string*) – label name

kiwi.filesystem.ext4 Module

```
class kiwi.filesystem.ext4.FileSystemExt4 (device_provider,  
                                           root_dir=None,      cus-  
                                           tom_args=None)
```

Bases: *kiwi.filesystem.base.FileSystemBase*

Implements creation of ext4 filesystem

create_on_device (*label=None*)

Create ext4 filesystem on block device

Parameters **label** (*string*) – label name

kiwi.filesystem.fat16 Module

```
class kiwi.filesystem.fat16.FileSystemFat16 (device_provider,  
                                           root_dir=None,  
                                           custom_args=None)
```

Bases: *kiwi.filesystem.base.FileSystemBase*

Implements creation of fat16 filesystem

create_on_device (*label=None*)
Create fat16 filesystem on block device

Parameters **label** (*string*) – label name

kiwi.filesystem.fat32 Module

```
class kiwi.filesystem.fat32.FileSystemFat32 (device_provider,  
                                           root_dir=None,  
                                           custom_args=None)
```

Bases: *kiwi.filesystem.base.FileSystemBase*

Implements creation of fat16 filesystem

create_on_device (*label=None*)
Create fat32 filesystem on block device

Parameters **label** (*string*) – label name

kiwi.filesystem.iso9660 Module

```
class kiwi.filesystem.iso9660.FileSystemIsoFs (device_provider,  
                                           root_dir=None,  
                                           custom_args=None)
```

Bases: *kiwi.filesystem.base.FileSystemBase*

Implements creation of iso filesystem

create_on_file (*filename, label=None, exclude=None*)
Create iso filesystem from data tree

There is no label which could be set for iso filesystem thus this parameter is not used

Parameters

- **filename** (*string*) – result file path name
- **label** (*string*) – unused
- **exclude** (*string*) – unused

kiwi.filesystem.setup Module

class `kiwi.filesystem.setup.FileSystemSetup` (*xml_state*, *root_dir*)

Bases: `object`

Implement filesystem setup methods

Methods from this class provides information from the root directory required before building a filesystem image

Parameters

- **xml_state** (*object*) – Instance of XMLState
- **root_dir** (*string*) – root directory path

get_size_mbytes (*filesystem=None*)

Precalculate the requires size in mbytes to store all data from the root directory in the requested filesystem. Return the configured value if present, if not return the calculated result

Parameters **filesystem** (*string*) – name

Returns mbytes

Return type int

kiwi.filesystem.squashfs Module

class `kiwi.filesystem.squashfs.FileSystemSquashFs` (*device_provider*,
root_dir=None,
cus-
tom_args=None)

Bases: `kiwi.filesystem.base.FileSystemBase`

Implements creation of squashfs filesystem

create_on_file (*filename*, *label=None*, *exclude=None*)

Create squashfs filesystem from data tree

There is no label which could be set for squashfs thus this parameter is not used

Parameters

- **filename** (*string*) – result file path name
- **label** (*string*) – unused
- **exclude** (*list*) – list of exclude dirs/files

kiwi.filesystem.xfs Module

```
class kiwi.filesystem.xfs.FileSystemXfs (device_provider,  
                                         root_dir=None,           cus-  
                                         tom_args=None)
```

Bases: *kiwi.filesystem.base.FileSystemBase*

Implements creation of xfs filesystem

create_on_device (*label=None*)

Create xfs filesystem on block device

Parameters **label** (*string*) – label name

Module Contents

```
class kiwi.filesystem.FileSystem
```

Bases: *object*

FileSystem factory

Parameters

- **name** (*string*) – filesystem name
- **device_provider** (*object*) – Instance of DeviceProvider
- **root_dir** (*string*) – root directory path name
- **custom_args** (*dict*) – dict of custom filesystem arguments

kiwi.iso_tools Package

Submodules

kiwi.iso_tools.base Module

```
class kiwi.iso_tools.base.IsoToolsBase (source_dir)
```

Bases: *object*

Base Class for Parameter API for iso creation tools

Parameters

- **source_dir** (*string*) – data source dir, usually root_dir
- **boot_path** (*str*) – architecture specific boot path on the ISO
- **iso_parameters** (*str*) – list of ISO creation parameters
- **iso_loaders** (*str*) – list of ISO loaders to embed

add_efi_loader_parameters()

Add ISO creation parameters to embed the EFI loader

Implementation in specialized tool class

create_iso(*filename*, *hidden_files=None*)

Create iso file

Implementation in specialized tool class

Parameters

- **filename**(*str*) – unused
- **hidden_files**(*list*) – unused

get_tool_name()

Return caller name for iso creation tool

Implementation in specialized tool class

Returns tool name

Return type str

has_iso_hybrid_capability()

Indicate if the iso tool has the capability to embed a partition table into the iso such that it can be used as both; an iso and a disk

Implementation in specialized tool class

init_iso_creation_parameters(*custom_args=None*)

Create a set of standard parameters for the main isolinux loader

Implementation in specialized tool class

Parameters **custom_args**(*list*) – unused

list_iso(*isofile*)

List contents of an ISO image

Parameters **isofile**(*str*) – unused

kiwi.iso_tools.cdrtools Module

class `kiwi.iso_tools.cdrtools.IsoToolsCdrTools`(*source_dir*)

Bases: `kiwi.iso_tools.base.IsoToolsBase`

cdrkit/cdrtools wrapper class

Implementation of Parameter API for iso creation tools using the cdrkit/cdrtools projects. Addressed here are the option compatible tools mkisofs and genisoimage

add_efi_loader_parameters()

Add ISO creation parameters to embed the EFI loader

In order to boot the ISO from EFI, the EFI binary is added as alternative loader to the ISO creation parameter list. The EFI binary must be included into a fat filesystem

in order to become recognized by the firmware. For details about this file refer to `_create_embedded_fat_efi_image()` from `bootloader/config/grub2.py`

create_iso (*filename*, *hidden_files=None*)

Creates the iso file with the given filename using cdrtools

Parameters

- **filename** (*str*) – output filename
- **hidden_files** (*list*) – list of hidden files

get_tool_name ()

There are tools by J.Schilling and tools from the community Depending on what is installed a decision needs to be made. mkisofs is preferred over genisoimage

Raises *KiwiIsoToolError* – if no iso creation tool is found

Returns tool name

Return type str

has_iso_hybrid_capability ()

Indicate if the iso tool has the capability to embed a partition table into the iso such that it can be used as both; an iso and a disk

Returns True or False

Return type bool

init_iso_creation_parameters (*custom_args=None*)

Create a set of standard parameters

Parameters **custom_args** (*list*) – custom ISO creation args

list_iso (*isofile*)

List contents of an ISO image

Parameters **isofile** (*str*) – path to the ISO file

Returns formatted isoinfo result

Return type dict

kiwi.iso_tools.iso Module

class `kiwi.iso_tools.iso.Iso` (*source_dir*)

Bases: object

Implements helper methods around the creation of ISO filesystems

Parameters

- **header_id** (*str*) – static identifier string for self written headers
- **header_end_name** (*str*) – file name to store the header_id to

- **header_end_file** (*str*) – full file path for the header_end_name file
- **boot_path** (*str*) – architecture specific boot path on the ISO

create_header_end_block (*isofile*)

Find offset address of file containing the header_id and replace it by a list of 2k blocks in range 0 - offset + 1 This is the required preparation to support hybrid ISO images, meaning to let isohybrid work correctly

Parameters **isofile** (*string*) – path to the ISO file

Raises *KiwiIsoLoaderError* – if the header_id file is not found

Returns 512 byte blocks offset address

Return type int

create_header_end_marker ()

Prepare iso file to become a hybrid iso image.

To do this the offset address of the end of the first iso block is required. To lookup this address a reference(marker) file named 'header_end' is created and will show up as last file in the block.

classmethod create_hybrid (*offset, mbrid, isofile, efi_mode=False*)

Create hybrid ISO

A hybrid ISO embeds both, an isolinux signature as well as a disk signature. kiwi always adds an msdos and a GPT table for the disk signatures

Parameters

- **offset** (*str*) – hex offset
- **mbrid** (*str*) – boot record id
- **isofile** (*str*) – path to the ISO file
- **efi_mode** (*bool*) – sets the iso to support efi firmware or not

classmethod fix_boot_catalog (*isofile*)

Fixup inconsistencies in boot catalog

Make sure all catalog entries are in correct order and provide complete metadata information e.g catalog name

Parameters **isofile** (*str*) – path to the ISO file

classmethod relocate_boot_catalog (*isofile*)

Move ISO boot catalog to the standardized place

Check location of the boot catalog and move it to the place where all BIOS and firmware implementations expects it

Parameters **isofile** (*str*) – path to the ISO file

classmethod set_media_tag (*isofile*)

Include checksum tag in the ISO so it can be verified with the mediacheck program.

Parameters **isofile** (*str*) – path to the ISO file

setup_isolinux_boot_path()

Write the base boot path into the isolinux loader binary

Raises **KiwiIsoLoaderError** – if loader/isolinux.bin is not found

Module Contents

class `kiwi.iso_tools.IsoTools`

Bases: object

IsoTools factory

kiwi.package_manager Package

Submodules

kiwi.package_manager.base Module

class `kiwi.package_manager.base.PackageManagerBase` (*repository,*

cus-

tom_args=None)

Bases: object

Implements base class for installation/deletion of packages and collections using a package manager

Parameters

- **repository** (*object*) – instance of Repository
- **root_dir** (*str*) – root directory path name
- **root_bind** (*object*) – instance of RootBind
- **package_requests** (*list*) – list of packages to install or delete
- **collection_requests** (*list*) – list of collections to install
- **product_requests** (*list*) – list of products to install

cleanup_requests()

Cleanup request queues

database_consistent()

Check if package database is consistent

Implementation in specialized package manager class

dump_reload_package_database (*version=45*)

For rpm based package managers, dump and reload the database to match the desired rpm db version

Implementation in specialized package manager class

Parameters **version** (*str*) – unused

match_package_deleted (*package_list*, *log_line*)

Match expression to indicate a package has been deleted

Implementation in specialized package manager class

Parameters

- **package_list** (*list*) – unused

- **log_line** (*str*) – unused

match_package_installed (*package_list*, *log_line*)

Match expression to indicate a package has been installed

Implementation in specialized package manager class

Parameters

- **package_list** (*list*) – unused

- **log_line** (*str*) – unused

post_init (*custom_args=None*)

Post initialization method

Implementation in specialized package manager class

Parameters **custom_args** (*list*) – unused

process_delete_requests (*force=False*)

Process package delete requests (chroot)

Implementation in specialized package manager class

Parameters **force** (*bool*) – unused

process_install_requests ()

Process package install requests for image phase (chroot)

Implementation in specialized package manager class

process_install_requests_bootstrap ()

Process package install requests for bootstrap phase (no chroot)

Implementation in specialized package manager class

process_only_required ()

Setup package processing only for required packages

Implementation in specialized package manager class

process_plus_recommended ()

Setup package processing to also include recommended dependencies

Implementation in specialized package manager class

request_collection (*name*)

Queue a package collection

Implementation in specialized package manager class

Parameters **name** (*str*) – unused

request_package (*name*)

Queue a package request

Implementation in specialized package manager class

Parameters **name** (*str*) – unused

request_package_exclusion (*name*)

Queue a package exclusion(skip) request

Implementation in specialized package manager class

Parameters **name** (*str*) – unused

request_package_lock (*name*)

Queue a package exclusion(skip) request

Obsolete method, only kept for API compatibility Method calls: request_package_exclusion

request_product (*name*)

Queue a product request

Implementation in specialized package manager class

Parameters **name** (*str*) – unused

update ()

Process package update requests (chroot)

Implementation in specialized package manager class

kiwi.package_manager.yum Module

```
class kiwi.package_manager.yum.PackageManagerYum (repository,  
                                                    cus-  
                                                    tom_args=None)  
Bases: kiwi.package_manager.base.PackageManagerBase
```

Implements base class for installation/deletion of packages and collections using yum

Parameters

- **yum_args** (*list*) – yum arguments from repository runtime configuration
- **command_env** (*dict*) – yum command environment from repository runtime configuration

database_consistent ()

Check if rpm package database is consistent

Returns True or False

Return type bool

dump_reload_package_database (*version=45*)

Dump and reload the rpm database to match the desired rpm db version

For the supported RHEL versions there is no dump/reload cycle required

Parameters **version** (*str*) – unused

match_package_deleted (*package_name*, *yum_output*)

Match expression to indicate a package has been deleted

Parameters

- **package_list** (*list*) – list of all packages
- **log_line** (*str*) – yum status line

Returns match or None if there isn't any match

Return type match object, None

match_package_installed (*package_name*, *yum_output*)

Match expression to indicate a package has been installed

This match for the package to be installed in the output of the yum command is not 100% accurate. There might be false positives due to sub package names starting with the same base package name

Parameters

- **package_list** (*list*) – list of all packages
- **log_line** (*str*) – yum status line

Returns match or None if there isn't any match

Return type match object, None

post_init (*custom_args=None*)

Post initialization method

Store custom yum arguments

Parameters **custom_args** (*list*) – custom yum arguments

process_delete_requests (*force=False*)

Process package delete requests (chroot)

Parameters **force** (*bool*) – force deletion: true/false

Raises *KiwiRequestError* – if none of the packages to delete is installed

Returns process results in command type

Return type namedtuple

process_install_requests()

Process package install requests for image phase (chroot)

Returns process results in command type

Return type namedtuple

process_install_requests_bootstrap()

Process package install requests for bootstrap phase (no chroot)

Returns process results in command type

Return type namedtuple

process_only_required()

Setup package processing only for required packages

process_plus_recommended()

Setup package processing to also include recommended dependencies.

request_collection(name)

Queue a collection request

Parameters **name** (*str*) – yum group name

request_package(name)

Queue a package request

Parameters **name** (*str*) – package name

request_package_exclusion(name)

Queue a package exclusion(skip) request

Parameters **name** (*str*) – package name

request_product(name)

Queue a product request

There is no product definition in the rhel repo data

Parameters **name** (*str*) – unused

update()

Process package update requests (chroot)

Returns process results in command type

Return type namedtuple

kiwi.package_manager.zypper Module

```
class kiwi.package_manager.zypper.PackageManagerZypper (repository,  
                                                    cus-  
                                                    tom_args=None)  
  
Bases: kiwi.package_manager.base.PackageManagerBase
```

Implements base class for installation/deletion of packages and collections using zypper

Parameters

- **zypper_args** (*list*) – zypper arguments from repository runtime configuration
- **command_env** (*dict*) – zypper command environment from repository runtime configuration

database_consistent ()

Check if rpm package database is consistent

Returns True or False

Return type bool

dump_reload_package_database (*version=45*)

Dump and reload the rpm database to match the desired rpm db version Supported target rpm database db versions are

- 45 (db45_load)
- 48 (db48_load)

Parameters **version** (*str*) – target rpm db version

match_package_deleted (*package_name, zypper_output*)

Match expression to indicate a package has been deleted

Parameters

- **package_list** (*list*) – list of all packages
- **log_line** (*str*) – zypper status line

Returns match or None if there isn't any match

Return type match object, None

match_package_installed (*package_name, zypper_output*)

Match expression to indicate a package has been installed

This match for the package to be installed in the output of the zypper command is not 100% accurate. There might be false positives due to sub package names starting with the same base package name

Parameters

- **package_list** (*list*) – list of all packages
- **log_line** (*str*) – zypper status line

Returns match or None if there isn't any match

Return type match object, None

post_init (*custom_args=None*)

Post initialization method

Store custom zypper arguments

Parameters **custom_args** (*list*) – custom zypper arguments

process_delete_requests (*force=False*)

Process package delete requests (chroot)

Parameters **force** (*bool*) – force deletion: true/false

Raises **KiwiRequestError** – if none of the packages to delete is installed

Returns process results in command type

Return type namedtuple

process_install_requests ()

Process package install requests for image phase (chroot)

Returns process results in command type

Return type namedtuple

process_install_requests_bootstrap ()

Process package install requests for bootstrap phase (no chroot)

Returns process results in command type

Return type namedtuple

process_only_required ()

Setup package processing only for required packages

process_plus_recommended ()

Setup package processing to also include recommended dependencies.

request_collection (*name*)

Queue a collection request

Parameters **name** (*str*) – zypper pattern name

request_package (*name*)

Queue a package request

Parameters **name** (*str*) – package name

request_package_exclusion (*name*)

Queue a package exclusion(skip) request

Parameters **name** (*str*) – package name

request_product (*name*)

Queue a product request

Parameters **name** (*str*) – zypper product name

update ()

Process package update requests (chroot)

Returns process results in command type

Return type namedtuple

Module Contents

class `kiwi.package_manager.PackageManager`

Bases: object

Package manager factory

Parameters

- **repository** (*object*) – instance of Repository
- **package_manager** (*str*) – package manager name
- **custom_args** (*list*) – custom package manager arguments list

Raises [*KiwiPackageManagerSetupError*](#) – if the requested package manager type is not supported

Returns package manager

Return type PackageManagerBase subclass

kiwi.partitionner Package

Submodules

kiwi.partitionner.base Module

class `kiwi.partitionner.base.PartitionerBase` (*disk_provider*,
start_sector=None)

Bases: object

Base class for partitioners

Parameters

- **disk_provider** (*object*) – Instance of DeviceProvider
- **start_sector** (*int*) – sector number

create (*name*, *mbsize*, *type_name*, *flags=None*)

Create partition

Implementation in specialized partitioner class

Parameters

- **name** (*string*) – unused

- **mbsize** (*int*) – unused
- **type_name** (*string*) – unused
- **flags** (*list*) – unused

get_id()

Current partition number

Zero indicates no partition has been created so far

Returns partition number

Return type int

post_init()

Post initialization method

Implementation in specialized partitioner class

resize_table (*entries=None*)

Resize partition table

Parameters **entries** (*int*) – unused

set_flag (*partition_id, flag_name*)

Set partition flag

Implementation in specialized partitioner class

Parameters

- **partition_id** (*int*) – unused
- **flag_name** (*string*) – unused

set_hybrid_mbr()

Turn partition table into hybrid table if supported

Implementation in specialized partitioner class

set_mbr()

Turn partition table into MBR (msdos table)

Implementation in specialized partitioner class

kiwi.partitionner.dasd Module

class kiwi.partitionner.dasd.**PartitionerDasd** (*disk_provider,*
start_sector=None)

Bases: *kiwi.partitionner.base.PartitionerBase*

Implements DASD partition setup

create (*name, mbsize, type_name, flags=None*)

Create DASD partition

Parameters

- **name** (*string*) – partition name
- **mbsize** (*int*) – partition size
- **type_name** (*string*) – unused
- **flags** (*list*) – unused

post_init ()

Post initialization method

Setup fdasd partition type/flag map

resize_table (*entries=None*)

Resize partition table

Nothing to be done here for DASD devices

Parameters **entries** (*int*) – unused

kiwi.partitioners.gpt Module

class `kiwi.partitioners.gpt.PartitionerGpt` (*disk_provider*,
start_sector=None)

Bases: `kiwi.partitioners.base.PartitionerBase`

Implements GPT partition setup

create (*name, mbsize, type_name, flags=None*)

Create GPT partition

Parameters

- **name** (*string*) – partition name
- **mbsize** (*int*) – partition size
- **type_name** (*string*) – partition type
- **flags** (*list*) – additional flags

post_init ()

Post initialization method

Setup gdisk partition type/flag map

resize_table (*entries=128*)

Resize partition table

Parameters **entries** (*int*) – number of default entries

set_flag (*partition_id, flag_name*)

Set GPT partition flag

Parameters

- **partition_id** (*int*) – partition number
- **flag_name** (*string*) – name from flag map

set_hybrid_mbr()

Turn partition table into hybrid GPT/MBR table

set_mbr()

Turn partition table into MBR (msdos table)

kiwi.partitioners.msdos Module

class `kiwi.partitioners.msdos.PartitionerMsDos` (*disk_provider*,
start_sector=None)
Bases: `kiwi.partitioners.base.PartitionerBase`

Implement old style msdos partition setup

create (*name*, *mbsize*, *type_name*, *flags=None*)

Create msdos partition

Parameters

- **name** (*string*) – partition name
- **mbsize** (*int*) – partition size
- **type_name** (*string*) – partition type
- **flags** (*list*) – additional flags

post_init()

Post initialization method

Setup sfdisk partition type/flag map

resize_table (*entries=None*)

Resize partition table

Nothing to be done here for msdos table

Parameters **entries** (*int*) – unused

set_flag (*partition_id*, *flag_name*)

Set msdos partition flag

Parameters

- **partition_id** (*int*) – partition number
- **flag_name** (*string*) – name from flag map

Module Contents

class `kiwi.partitioners.Partitioner`

Bases: `object`

Partitioner factory

Parameters

- **table_type** (*string*) – Table type name
- **storage_provider** (*object*) – Instance of class based on DeviceProvider
- **start_sector** (*int*) – sector number

kiwi.repository Package

Subpackages

kiwi.repository.template Package

Submodules

kiwi.repository.template.apt Module

class kiwi.repository.template.apt.**PackageManagerTemplateAptGet**

Bases: object

apt-get configuration file template

get_host_template (*exclude_docs=False*)

apt-get package manager template for apt-get called outside of the image, not chrooted

Return type Template

get_image_template (*exclude_docs=False*)

apt-get package manager template for apt-get called inside of the image, chrooted

Return type Template

Module Contents

Submodules

kiwi.repository.base Module

class kiwi.repository.base.**RepositoryBase** (*root_bind*, *custom_args=None*)

Bases: object

Implements base class for package manager repository handling

Attributes

Parameters

- **root_bind** (*object*) – instance of RootBind

- **root_dir** (*str*) – root directory path name
- **shared_location** (*str*) – shared directory between image root and build system root

add_repo (*name, uri, repo_type, prio, dist, components, user, secret, credentials_file, repo_gpgcheck, pkg_gpgcheck*)

Add repository

Implementation in specialized repository class

Parameters

- **name** (*str*) – unused
- **uri** (*str*) – unused
- **repo_type** – unused
- **prio** (*int*) – unused
- **dist** – unused
- **components** – unused
- **user** – unused
- **secret** – unused
- **credentials_file** – unused
- **repo_gpgcheck** – unused
- **pkg_gpgcheck** – unused

cleanup_unused_repos ()

Cleanup/Delete unused repositories

Only configured repositories according to the image configuration are allowed to be active when building

Implementation in specialized repository class

delete_all_repos ()

Delete all repositories

Implementation in specialized repository class

delete_repo (*name*)

Delete repository

Implementation in specialized repository class

Parameters **name** (*str*) – unused

delete_repo_cache (*name*)

Delete repository cache

Implementation in specialized repository class

Parameters **name** (*str*) – unused

import_trusted_keys (*signing_keys*)

Imports trusted keys into the image

Implementation in specialized repository class

Parameters **signing_keys** (*list*) – list of the key files to import

post_init (*custom_args*)

Post initialization method

Implementation in specialized repository class

Parameters **custom_args** (*list*) – unused

runtime_config ()

Repository runtime configuration and environment

Implementation in specialized repository class

use_default_location ()

Call repository operations with default repository manager setup

Implementation in specialized repository class

kiwi.repository.yum Module

class `kiwi.repository.yum.RepositoryYum` (*root_bind*, *custom_args=None*)

Bases: `kiwi.repository.base.RepositoryBase`

Implements repository handling for yum package manager

Parameters

- **shared_yum_dir** (*str*) – shared directory between image root and build system root
- **runtime_yum_config_file** (*str*) – yum runtime config file name
- **command_env** (*dict*) – customized os.environ for yum
- **runtime_yum_config** (*object*) – instance of ConfigParser

add_repo (*name*, *uri*, *repo_type='rpm-md'*, *prio=None*, *dist=None*, *components=None*, *user=None*, *secret=None*, *credentials_file=None*, *repo_gpgcheck=None*, *pkg_gpgcheck=None*)

Add yum repository

Parameters

- **name** (*str*) – repository base file name
- **uri** (*str*) – repository URI
- **repo_type** – repository type name

- **prio** (*int*) – yum repostory priority
- **dist** – unused
- **components** – unused
- **user** – unused
- **secret** – unused
- **credentials_file** – unused
- **repo_gpgcheck** (*bool*) – enable repository signature validation
- **pkg_gpgcheck** (*bool*) – enable package signature validation

cleanup_unused_repos ()

Delete unused yum repositories

Repository configurations which are not used for this build must be removed otherwise they are taken into account for the package installations

delete_all_repos ()

Delete all yum repositories

delete_repo (*name*)

Delete yum repository

Parameters **name** (*str*) – repository base file name

delete_repo_cache (*name*)

Delete yum repository cache

The cache data for each repository is stored in a directory of the same name as the repository name. The method deletes this directory to cleanup the cache information

Parameters **name** (*str*) – repository name

import_trusted_keys (*signing_keys*)

Imports trusted keys into the image

Parameters **signing_keys** (*list*) – list of the key files to import

post_init (*custom_args=None*)

Post initialization method

Store custom yum arguments and create runtime configuration and environment

Parameters **custom_args** (*list*) – yum arguments

runtime_config ()

yum runtime configuration and environment

Returns yum_args:list, command_env:dict

Return type dict

use_default_location ()

Setup yum repository operations to store all data in the default places

```
class kiwi.repository.yum.RepositoryYumSpaceRemover (file_object)
    Bases: object
```

Yum is not able to deal with key = value pairs if there are spaces around the '=' delimiter.

This is a helper class to eliminate spaces around delimiters when writing out the data of a ConfigParser instance. In Python 3 ConfigParser.write() supports the parameter:

```
ConfigParser.write(file_object, space_around_delimiters=False)
```

Unfortunately, in Python 2 the spaces are hard coded and can't be configured. In order to still support both Python versions this helper class provides a custom `write()` method which deletes the unwanted spaces.

Instead of passing an instance of a file_object to ConfigParser we pass an instance of a `RepositoryYumSpaceRemover` object:

```
ConfigParser.write(RepositoryYumSpaceRemover(file_object))
```

It is expected that ConfigParser.write() only calls the `write()` method of the usually provided file object. Thus this helper class only provides a custom version of this `write()` method.

write(data)

kiwi.repository.zypper Module

```
class kiwi.repository.zypper.RepositoryZypper (root_bind,      cus-
                                             tom_args=None)
```

Bases: `kiwi.repository.base.RepositoryBase`

Implements repo handling for zypper package manager

Parameters

- **shared_zypper_dir** (*str*) – shared directory between image root and build system root
- **runtime_zypper_config_file** (*str*) – zypper runtime config file name
- **runtime_zypp_config_file** (*str*) – libzypp runtime config file name
- **zypper_args** (*list*) – zypper caller args plus additional custom args
- **command_env** (*dict*) – customized os.environ for zypper
- **runtime_zypper_config** (*object*) – instance of ConfigParser

add_repo(*name*, *uri*, *repo_type*='rpm-md', *prio*=None, *dist*=None, *components*=None, *user*=None, *secret*=None, *credentials_file*=None, *repo_gpgcheck*=None, *pkg_gpgcheck*=None)
Add zypper repository

Parameters

- **name** (*str*) – repository name
- **uri** (*str*) – repository URI
- **repo_type** – repository type name
- **prio** (*int*) – zypper repository priority
- **dist** – unused
- **components** – unused
- **user** – credentials username
- **secret** – credentials password
- **credentials_file** – zypper credentials file
- **repo_gpgcheck** (*bool*) – enable repository signature validation
- **pkg_gpgcheck** (*bool*) – enable package signature validation

cleanup_unused_repos()
Delete unused zypper repositories

zypper creates a system solvable which is unwanted for the purpose of building images. In addition zypper fails with an error message 'Failed to cache rpm database' if such a system solvable exists and a new root system is created

All other repository configurations which are not used for this build must be removed too, otherwise they are taken into account for the package installations

delete_all_repos()
Delete all zypper repositories

delete_repo(*name*)
Delete zypper repository

Parameters **name** (*str*) – repository name

delete_repo_cache(*name*)
Delete zypper repository cache

The cache data for each repository is stored in a list of directories of the same name as the repository name. The method deletes these directories to cleanup the cache information

Parameters **name** (*str*) – repository name

import_trusted_keys(*signing_keys*)
Imports trusted keys into the image

Parameters **signing_keys** (*list*) – list of the key files to import

post_init (*custom_args=None*)

Post initialization method

Store custom zypper arguments and create runtime configuration and environment

Parameters **custom_args** (*list*) – zypper arguments

runtime_config ()

zypper runtime configuration and environment

use_default_location ()

Setup zypper repository operations to store all data in the default places

Module Contents

class `kiwi.repository.Repository`

Bases: `object`

Repository factory

Parameters

- **root_bind** (*object*) – instance of `RootBind`
- **package_manager** (*str*) – package manager name
- **custom_args** (*list*) – list of custom package manager arguments to setup the repository

Raises *KiwiRepositorySetupError* – if `package_manager` is not supported

kiwi.storage Package

Subpackages

kiwi.storage.subformat Package

Subpackages

kiwi.storage.subformat.template Package

Submodules

`kiwi.storage.subformat.template.vmware_settings` Module

class `kiwi.storage.subformat.template.vmware_settings.VmwareSettingsTempl`

Bases: `object`

VMware machine settings template

get_template (*memory_setup=False, cpu_setup=False, network_setup=False, iso_setup=False, disk_controller='ide', iso_controller='ide'*)
VMware machine configuration template

Parameters

- **memory_setup** (*bool*) – with main memory setup *true*/*false*
- **cpu_setup** (*bool*) – with number of CPU's setup *true*/*false*
- **network_setup** (*bool*) – with network emulation *true*/*false*
- **iso_setup** (*bool*) – with CD/DVD drive emulation *true*/*false*
- **disk_controller** (*string*) – add disk controller setup to template
- **iso_controller** (*string*) – add CD/DVD controller setup to template
- **network_mac** (*string*) – add static MAC address setup to template
- **network_driver** (*string*) – add network driver setup to template
- **network_connection_type** (*string*) – add connection type to template

Return type Template

Module contents

Submodules

`kiwi.storage.subformat.base` Module

class `kiwi.storage.subformat.base.DiskFormatBase` (*xml_state, root_dir, target_dir, custom_args=None*)

Bases: `object`

Base class to create disk formats from a raw disk image

Parameters

- **xml_state** (*object*) – Instance of `XMLState`
- **root_dir** (*string*) – root directory path name
- **arch** (*string*) – platform.machine
- **target_dir** (*string*) – target directory path name
- **custom_args** (*dict*) – custom format options dictionary

create_image_format()

Create disk format

Implementation in specialized disk format class required

get_qemu_option_list() (*custom_args*)

Create list of qemu options from custom_args dict

Parameters **custom_args** (*dict*) – arguments

Returns qemu option list

Return type list

get_target_file_path_for_format() (*format_name*)

Create target file path name for specified format

Parameters **format_name** (*string*) – disk format name

Returns file path name

Return type str

has_raw_disk()

Check if the base raw disk image exists

Returns True or False

Return type bool

post_init() (*custom_args*)

Post initialization method

Implementation in specialized disk format class if required

Parameters **custom_args** (*list*) – unused

resize_raw_disk() (*size_bytes*, *append=False*)

Resize raw disk image to specified size. If the request would actually shrink the disk an exception is raised. If the disk got changed the method returns True, if the new size is the same as the current size nothing gets resized and the method returns False

Parameters **size** (*int*) – size in bytes

Returns True or False

Return type bool

store_to_result() (*result*)

Store result file of the format conversion into the provided result instance.

By default only the converted image file will be stored. Subformats which creates additional metadata files needs to overwrite this method

Parameters **result** (*object*) – Instance of Result

kiwi.storage.subformat.gce Module

```
class kiwi.storage.subformat.gce.DiskFormatGce (xml_state,  
                                                root_dir,    tar-  
                                                get_dir,    cus-  
                                                tom_args=None)
```

Bases: *kiwi.storage.subformat.base.DiskFormatBase*

Create GCE - Google Compute Engine image format

create_image_format ()

Create GCE disk format and manifest

get_target_file_path_for_format (format_name)

Google requires the image name to follow their naming convention. Therefore it's required to provide a suitable name by overriding the base class method

Parameters **format_name** (*string*) – gce

Returns file path name

Return type str

post_init (custom_args)

GCE disk format post initialization method

Store disk tag from custom args

Parameters **custom_args** (*dict*) – custom gce argument dictionary

{ '-tag': 'billing_code' }

kiwi.storage.subformat.ova Module

```
class kiwi.storage.subformat.ova.DiskFormatOva (xml_state,  
                                                root_dir,    tar-  
                                                get_dir,    cus-  
                                                tom_args=None)
```

Bases: *kiwi.storage.subformat.base.DiskFormatBase*

Create ova disk format, based on vmdk

create_image_format ()

Create ova disk format using ovftool from <https://www.vmware.com/support/developer/ovf>

post_init (custom_args)

vmdk disk format post initialization method

Store qemu options as list from custom args dict

Parameters **custom_args** (*dict*) – custom qemu arguments dictionary

store_to_result (*result*)

Store the resulting ova file into the provided result instance.

Parameters **result** (*object*) – Instance of Result

kiwi.storage.subformat.qcow2 Module

```
class kiwi.storage.subformat.qcow2.DiskFormatQcow2 (xml_state,  
                                                    root_dir,  
                                                    target_dir,  
                                                    cus-  
                                                    tom_args=None)
```

Bases: *kiwi.storage.subformat.base.DiskFormatBase*

Create qcow2 disk format

create_image_format ()

Create qcow2 disk format

post_init (*custom_args*)

qcow2 disk format post initialization method

Store qemu options as list from custom args dict

Parameters **custom_args** (*dict*) – custom qemu arguments dictionary

kiwi.storage.subformat.vagrant_libvirt Module

```
class kiwi.storage.subformat.vagrant_libvirt.DiskFormatVagrantLibVirt (xml_  
                                                                           root_  
                                                                           tar_  
                                                                           get_  
                                                                           cus-  
                                                                           tom_
```

Bases: *kiwi.storage.subformat.base.DiskFormatBase*

Create vagrant box for libvirt provider

create_image_format ()

Create vagrant box for libvirt provider. This includes

- creation of qcow2 disk image format as box.img
- creation of box metadata.json
- creation of box Vagrantfile
- creation of result format tarball from the files created above

post_init (*custom_args*)

vagrant disk format post initialization method

store vagrantconfig information provided via custom_args

Parameters **custom_args** (*dict*) – Contains instance of `xml_parse::vagrantconfig`

`{ 'vagrantconfig': object }`

kiwi.storage.subformat.vdi Module

class `kiwi.storage.subformat.vdi.DiskFormatVdi` (*xml_state*,
root_dir, *target_dir*,
get_dir, *custom_args=None*)

Bases: `kiwi.storage.subformat.base.DiskFormatBase`

Create vdi disk format

create_image_format ()
Create vdi disk format

post_init (*custom_args*)
vdi disk format post initialization method

Store qemu options as list from custom args dict

Parameters **custom_args** (*dict*) – custom qemu arguments dictionary

kiwi.storage.subformat.vhd Module

class `kiwi.storage.subformat.vhd.DiskFormatVhd` (*xml_state*,
root_dir, *target_dir*,
get_dir, *custom_args=None*)

Bases: `kiwi.storage.subformat.base.DiskFormatBase`

Create vhd disk format

create_image_format ()
Create vhd disk format

post_init (*custom_args*)
vhd disk format post initialization method

Store qemu options as list from custom args dict

Parameters **custom_args** (*dict*) – custom qemu arguments dictionary

kiwi.storage.subformat.vhdfixed Module

```
class kiwi.storage.subformat.vhdfixed.DiskFormatVhdFixed(xml_state,  
                                                         root_dir,  
                                                         tar-  
                                                         get_dir,  
                                                         cus-  
                                                         tom_args=None)
```

Bases: *kiwi.storage.subformat.base.DiskFormatBase*

Create vhd image format in fixed subformat

create_image_format()
Create vhd fixed disk format

post_init() (*custom_args*)
vhd disk format post initialization method

Store qemu options as list from custom args dict Extract disk tag from custom args

Parameters **custom_args** (*dict*) – custom vhdfixed and qemu argument dictionary

{ '-tag': 'billing_code', '-qemu-opt': 'value' }

store_to_result() (*result*)
Store result file of the vhdfixed format conversion into the provided result instance.
In this case compressing the result is preferred as vhdfixed is not a compressed or dynamic format.

Parameters **result** (*object*) – Instance of Result

kiwi.storage.subformat.vhdx Module

```
class kiwi.storage.subformat.vhdx.DiskFormatVhdx(xml_state,  
                                                  root_dir, tar-  
                                                  get_dir, cus-  
                                                  tom_args=None)
```

Bases: *kiwi.storage.subformat.base.DiskFormatBase*

Create vhdx image format in dynamic subformat

create_image_format()
Create vhdx dynamic disk format

post_init() (*custom_args*)
vhdx disk format post initialization method

Store qemu options as list from custom args dict

Parameters **custom_args** (*dict*) – custom qemu arguments dictionary

kiwi.storage.subformat.vmdk Module

```
class kiwi.storage.subformat.vmdk.DiskFormatVmdk (xml_state,  
                                                root_dir, tar-  
                                                get_dir, cus-  
                                                tom_args=None)  
  
Bases: kiwi.storage.subformat.base.DiskFormatBase  
  
Create vmdk disk format  
  
create_image_format ()  
    Create vmdk disk format and machine settings file  
  
post_init (custom_args)  
    vmdk disk format post initialization method  
  
    Store qemu options as list from custom args dict  
  
    Parameters custom_args (dict) – custom qemu arguments dictio-  
        nary  
  
store_to_result (result)  
    Store result files of the vmdk format conversion into the provided result instance.  
    This includes the vmdk image file and the VMware settings file  
  
    Parameters result (object) – Instance of Result
```

Module Contents

```
class kiwi.storage.subformat.DiskFormat  
    Bases: object  
  
    DiskFormat factory  
  
    Parameters  
        • name (string) – Format name  
        • xml_state (object) – Instance of XMLState  
        • root_dir (string) – root directory path name  
        • target_dir (string) – target directory path name
```

Submodules

kiwi.storage.device_provider Module

```
class kiwi.storage.device_provider.DeviceProvider  
    Bases: object  
  
    Base class for any class providing storage devices
```

get_byte_size(*device*)

Size of device in bytes

Parameters **device** (*string*) – node name

Returns byte value from blockdev

Return type int

get_device()

Representation of device nodes

Could provide one ore more devices representing the storage Implementation in specialized device provider class

get_uuid(*device*)

UUID of device

Parameters **device** (*string*) – node name

Returns UUID from blkid

Return type str

is_loop()

Check if device provider is loop based

By default this is always False and needs an implementation in the the specialized device provider class

Returns True or False

Return type bool

kiwi.storage.disk Module

class kiwi.storage.disk.**Disk**(*table_type*, *storage_provider*,
start_sector=None)

Bases: *kiwi.storage.device_provider.DeviceProvider*

Implements storage disk and partition table setup

Parameters

- **table_type** (*string*) – Partition table type name
- **storage_provider** (*object*) – Instance of class based on DeviceProvider
- **start_sector** (*int*) – sector number

activate_boot_partition()

Activate boot partition

Note: not all Partitioner instances supports this

create_boot_partition (*mbsize*)

Create boot partition

Populates kiwi_BootPart(id)

Parameters **mbsize** (*int*) – partition size

create_efi_csm_partition (*mbsize*)

Create EFI bios grub partition

Populates kiwi_BiosGrub(id)

Parameters **mbsize** (*int*) – partition size

create_efi_partition (*mbsize*)

Create EFI partition

Populates kiwi_EfiPart(id)

Parameters **mbsize** (*int*) – partition size

create_hybrid_mbr ()

Turn partition table into a hybrid GPT/MBR table

Note: only GPT tables supports this

create_mbr ()

Turn partition table into MBR (msdos table)

Note: only GPT tables supports this

create_prep_partition (*mbsize*)

Create prep partition

Populates kiwi_PrepPart(id)

Parameters **mbsize** (*int*) – partition size

create_root_lvm_partition (*mbsize*)

Create root partition for use with LVM

Populates kiwi_RootPart(id) and kiwi_RootPartVol(LVRoot)

Parameters **mbsize** (*int*) – partition size

create_root_partition (*mbsize*)

Create root partition

Populates kiwi_RootPart(id) and kiwi_BootPart(id) if no extra boot partition is requested

Parameters **mbsize** (*int*) – partition size

create_root_raid_partition (*mbsize*)

Create root partition for use with MD Raid

Populates kiwi_RootPart(id) and kiwi_RaidPart(id) as well as the default raid device node at boot time which is configured to be kiwi_RaidDev(/dev/mdX)

Parameters **mbsize** (*int*) – partition size

create_root_readonly_partition (*mbsize*)

Create root readonly partition for use with overlayfs

Populates `kiwi_ReadOnlyPart(id)`, the partition is meant to contain a squashfs read-only filesystem. The partition size should be the size of the squashfs filesystem in order to avoid wasting disk space

Parameters **mbsize** (*int*) – partition size

create_spare_partition (*mbsize*)

Create spare partition for custom use

Populates `kiwi_SparePart(id)`

Parameters **mbsize** (*int*) – partition size

get_device ()

Names of partition devices

Note that the mapping requires an explicit `map()` call

Returns instances of `MappedDevice`

Return type dict

get_public_partition_id_map ()

Populated partition name to number map

is_loop ()

Check if storage provider is loop based

The information is taken from the storage provider. If the storage provider is loop based the disk is it too

Returns True or False

Return type bool

map_partitions ()

Map/Activate partitions

In order to access the partitions through a device node it is required to map them if the storage provider is loop based

wipe ()

Zap (destroy) any GPT and MBR data structures if present For DASD disks create a new VTOC table

kiwi.storage.loop_device Module

```
class kiwi.storage.loop_device.LoopDevice (filename, file-  
                                           size_mbytes=None,  
                                           blocksize_bytes=None)
```

Bases: `kiwi.storage.device_provider.DeviceProvider`

Create and manage loop device file for block operations

Parameters

- **filename** (*string*) – loop file name to create
- **filesize_mbytes** (*int*) – size of the loop file
- **blocksize_bytes** (*int*) – blocksize used in loop driver

create (*overwrite=True*)

Setup a loop device of the blocksize given in the constructor The file to loop is created with the size specified in the constructor unless an existing one should not be overwritten

Parameters **overwrite** (*bool*) – overwrite existing file to loop

get_device ()

Device node name

Returns device node name

Return type str

is_loop ()

Always True

Returns True

Return type bool

kiwi.storage.luks_device Module**class** kiwi.storage.luks_device.LuksDevice (*storage_provider*)

Bases: *kiwi.storage.device_provider.DeviceProvider*

Implements luks setup on a storage device

Parameters **storage_provider** (*object*) – Instance of class based on DeviceProvider

create_crypto_luks (*passphrase, os=None, options=None*)

Create luks device. Please note the passphrase is readable at creation time of this image. Make sure your host system is secure while this process runs

Parameters

- **passphrase** (*string*) – credentials
- **os** (*string*) – distribution name to match distribution specific options for cryptsetup
- **options** (*list*) – further cryptsetup options

create_crypttab (*filename*)

Create crypttab, setting the UUID of the storage device

Parameters **filename** (*string*) – file path name

get_device()

Instance of MappedDevice providing the luks device

Returns mapped luks device

Return type *MappedDevice*

is_loop()

Check if storage provider is loop based

Return loop status from base storage provider

Returns True or False

Return type bool

kiwi.storage.mapped_device Module

class `kiwi.storage.mapped_device.MappedDevice` (*device*, *device_provider*)

Bases: *kiwi.storage.device_provider.DeviceProvider*

Hold a reference on a single device

Parameters

- **device_provider** (*object*) – Instance of class based on DeviceProvider
- **device** (*string*) – Device node name

get_device()

Mapped device node name

Returns device node name

Return type str

is_loop()

Check if storage provider is loop based

Return loop status from base storage provider

Returns True or False

Return type bool

kiwi.storage.raid_device Module

class `kiwi.storage.raid_device.RaidDevice` (*storage_provider*)

Bases: *kiwi.storage.device_provider.DeviceProvider*

Implement raid setup on a storage device

Parameters **storage_provider** (*object*) – Instance of class based on DeviceProvider

create_degraded_raid (*raid_level*)

Create a raid array in degraded mode with one device missing. This only works in the raid levels 0(striping) and 1(mirroring)

Parameters **raid_level** (*string*) – raid level name

create_raid_config (*filename*)

Create mdadm config file from mdadm request

Parameters **filename** (*string*) – config file name

get_device ()

Instance of MappedDevice providing the raid device

Returns mapped raid device

Return type *MappedDevice*

is_loop ()

Check if storage provider is loop based

Return loop status from base storage provider

Returns True or False

Return type bool

kiwi.storage.setup Module

class `kiwi.storage.setup.DiskSetup` (*xml_state*, *root_dir*)

Bases: `object`

Implements disk setup methods

Methods from this class provides information required before building a disk image

Parameters

- **xml_state** (*object*) – Instance of XMLState
- **root_dir** (*string*) – root directory path name

boot_partition_size ()

Size of the boot partition in mbytes

Returns boot size mbytes

Return type int

get_boot_label ()

Filesystem Label to use for the boot partition

Returns label name

Return type str

get_disksize_mbytes ()

Precalculate disk size requirements in mbytes

Returns disk size mbytes

Return type int

get_efi_label()

Filesystem Label to use for the EFI partition

Returns label name

Return type str

get_root_label()

Filesystem Label to use for the root partition

If not specified in the XML configuration the default root label is set to 'ROOT'

Returns label name

Return type str

need_boot_partition()

Decide if an extra boot partition is needed. This is done with the bootpartition attribute from the type, however if it is not set it depends on some other type configuration parameters if we need a boot partition or not

Returns True or False

Return type bool

Module Contents

kiwi.system Package

Submodules

kiwi.system.identifier Module

class kiwi.system.identifier.**SystemIdentifier**

Bases: object

Create a random ID to identify the system

The information is used to create the mbrid file as an example

Parameters **image_id** (*str*) – hex identifier string

calculate_id()

Calculate random hex id

Using 4 tuples of rand in range from 1..0xfe

get_id()

Current hex identifier

Returns hex id

Return type `str`

write (*filename*)

Write current hex identifier to file

Parameters **filename** (*str*) – file path name

write_to_disk (*device_provider*)

Write current hex identifier to MBR at offset 0x1b8 on disk

Parameters **device_provider** (*object*) – Instance based on DeviceProvider

kiwi.system.kernel Module

class `kiwi.system.kernel.Kernel` (*root_dir*)

Bases: `object`

Implements kernel lookup and extraction from given root tree

Parameters

- **root_dir** (*str*) – root directory path name
- **kernel_names** (*list*) – list of kernel names to search for functions.sh::suseStripKernel() provides a normalized file so that we do not have to search for many different names in this code

copy_kernel (*target_dir*, *file_name=None*)

Copy kernel to specified target

If no *file_name* is given the target filename is set as `kernel-<kernel.version>.kernel`

Parameters

- **target_dir** (*str*) – target path name
- **filename** (*str*) – base filename in target

copy_xen_hypervisor (*target_dir*, *file_name=None*)

Copy xen hypervisor to specified target

If no *file_name* is given the target filename is set as `hypervisor-<xen.name>`

Parameters

- **target_dir** (*str*) – target path name
- **filename** (*str*) – base filename in target

get_kernel (*raise_on_not_found=False*)

Lookup kernel files and provide filename and version

Parameters **raise_on_not_found** (*bool*) – sets the method to raise an exception if the kernel is not found

Raises `KiwiKernelLookupError` – if `raise_on_not_found` flag is active and kernel is not found

Returns tuple with filename, kernelname and version

Return type namedtuple

get_xen_hypervisor()

Lookup xen hypervisor and provide filename and hypervisor name

Returns tuple with filename and hypervisor name

Return type namedtuple

kiwi.system.prepare Module

class kiwi.system.prepare.**SystemPrepare** (*xml_state*, *root_dir*, *allow_existing=False*)

Bases: object

Implements preparation and installation of a new root system

Parameters

- **xml_state** (*object*) – instance of XMLState
- **profiles** (*list*) – list of configured profiles
- **root_bind** (*object*) – instance of RootBind
- **uri_list** (*list*) – a list of Uri references

delete_packages (*manager*, *packages*, *force=False*)

Delete one or more packages using the package manager inside of the new root directory. If the removal is set with *force* flag only listed packages are deleted and any dependency break or leftover is ignored.

Parameters

- **manager** (*object*) – instance of a PackageManager subclass
- **packages** (*list*) – package list
- **force** (*bool*) – force deletion true/false

Raises *KiwiSystemDeletePackagesFailed* – if installation process fails

install_bootstrap (*manager*)

Install system software using the package manager from the host, also known as bootstrapping

Parameters **manager** (*object*) – instance of a PackageManager subclass

Raises *KiwiBootStrapPhaseFailed* – if the bootstrapping process fails either installing packages or including bootstrap archives

install_packages (*manager, packages*)

Install one or more packages using the package manager inside of the new root directory

Parameters

- **manager** (*object*) – instance of a `PackageManager` subclass
- **packages** (*list*) – package list

Raises *KiwiSystemInstallPackagesFailed* – if installation process fails

install_system (*manager*)

Install system software using the package manager inside of the new root directory. This is done via a chroot operation and requires the desired package manager to become installed via the bootstrap phase

Parameters **manager** (*object*) – instance of a `PackageManager` subclass

Raises *KiwiInstallPhaseFailed* – if the install process fails either installing packages or including any archive

pinch_system (*manager=None, force=False*)

Delete packages marked for deletion in the XML description. If force param is set to False uninstalls packages marked with `type="uninstall"` if any; if force is set to True deletes packages marked with `type="delete"` if any.

Parameters

- **manager** (*object*) – instance of `PackageManager`
- **force** (*bool*) – Forced deletion True/False

Raises *KiwiPackagesDeletePhaseFailed* – if the deletion packages process fails

setup_repositories (*clear_cache=False, signing_keys=None*)

Set up repositories for software installation and return a package manager for performing software installation tasks

Parameters

- **clear_cache** (*bool*) – flag the clear cache before configure anything
- **signing_keys** (*list*) – keys imported to the package manager

Returns instance of `PackageManager`

Return type *PackageManager*

update_system (*manager*)

Install package updates from the used repositories. the process uses the package manager from inside of the new root directory

Parameters manager (*object*) – instance of a `PackageManager` subclass

Raises *KiwiSystemUpdateFailed* – if packages update fails

`kiwi.system.profile` Module

class `kiwi.system.profile.Profile` (*xml_state*)

Bases: `object`

Create bash readable `.profile` environment from the XML description

The information is used by the kiwi first boot code.

Parameters

- **xml_state** (*object*) – instance of `:class'XMLState'`
- **dot_profile** (*dict*) – profile dictionary

add (*key*, *value*)

Add key/value pair to profile dictionary

Parameters

- **key** (*str*) – profile key
- **value** (*str*) – profile value

create ()

Create bash quoted profile

Returns profile dump for bash

Return type `str`

delete (*key*)

`kiwi.system.result` Module

class `kiwi.system.result.Result` (*xml_state*)

Bases: `object`

Collect image building results

Parameters

- **result_files** (*list*) – list of result files
- **class_version** (*object*) – *Result* class version
- **xml_state** (*object*) – instance of `XMLState`

add (*key*, *filename*, *use_for_bundle=True*, *compress=False*, *shasum=True*)

Add result tuple to `result_files` list

Parameters

- **key** (*str*) – name
- **filename** (*str*) – file path name
- **use_for_bundle** (*bool*) – use when bundling results true/false
- **compress** (*bool*) – compress when bundling true/false
- **shasum** (*bool*) – create shasum when bundling true/false

dump (*filename*)

Pickle dump this instance to a file

Parameters **filename** (*str*) – file path name

Raises **KiwiResultError** – if pickle fails to dump *Result* instance

get_results ()

Current list of result tuples

classmethod load (*filename*)

Load pickle dumped filename into a Result instance

Parameters **filename** (*str*) – file path name

Raises **KiwiResultError** – if filename does not exist or pickle fails to load filename

print_results ()

Print results human readable

verify_image_size (*size_limit*, *filename*)

Verifies the given image file does not exceed the size limit. Throws an exception if the limit is exceeded. If the size limit is set to None no verification is done.

Parameters

- **size_limit** (*int*) – The size limit for filename in bytes.
- **filename** (*str*) – File to verify.

Raises **KiwiResultError** – if filename exceeds the size limit

```
class kiwi.system.result.result_file_type (filename,  
                                           use_for_bundle,    com-  
                                           press, shasum)
```

Bases: tuple

compress

Alias for field number 2

filename

Alias for field number 0

shasum

Alias for field number 3

use_for_bundle

Alias for field number 1

kiwi.system.root_bind Module**class** `kiwi.system.root_bind.RootBind(root_init)`Bases: `object`

Implements binding/copying of host system paths into the new root directory

Parameters

- **root_dir** (*str*) – root directory path name
- **cleanup_files** (*list*) – list of files to cleanup, delete
- **mount_stack** (*list*) – list of mounted directories for cleanup
- **dir_stack** (*list*) – list of directories for cleanup
- **config_files** (*list*) – list of initial config files
- **bind_locations** (*list*) – list of kernel filesystems to bind mount
- **shared_location** (*str*) – shared directory between image root and build system root

cleanup ()

Cleanup mounted locations, directories and intermediate config files

mount_kernel_file_systems ()

Bind mount kernel filesystems

Raises `KiwiMountKernelFileSystemsError` – if some kernel filesystem fails to mount

mount_shared_directory (*host_dir=None*)

Bind mount shared location

The shared location is a directory which shares data from the image buildsystem host with the image root system. It is used for the repository setup and the package manager cache to allow chroot operations without being forced to duplicate this data

Parameters **host_dir** (*str*) – directory to share between image root and build system root

Raises `KiwiMountSharedDirectoryError` – if mount fails

move_to_root (*elements*)

Change the given path elements to a new root directory

Parameters **elements** (*list*) – list of path names

Returns changed elements

Return type list

setup_intermediate_config ()

Create intermediate config files

Some config files e.g etc/hosts needs to be temporarily copied from the buildsystem host to the image root system in order to allow e.g DNS resolution in the way as it is configured on the buildsystem host. These config files only exists during the image build process and are not part of the final image

Raises *KiwiSetupIntermediateConfigError* – if the management of intermediate configuration files fails

kiwi.system.root_init Module

class `kiwi.system.root_init.RootInit` (*root_dir*, *allow_existing=False*)

Bases: object

Implements creation of new root directory for a linux system

Host system independent static default files and device nodes are created to initialize a new base system

Parameters `root_dir` (*str*) – root directory path name

create ()

Create new system root directory

The method creates a temporary directory and initializes it for the purpose of building a system image from it. This includes the following setup:

- create static core device nodes
- create core system paths

On success the contents of the temporary location are synced to the specified `root_dir` and the temporary location will be deleted. That way we never work on an incomplete initial setup

Raises *KiwiRootInitCreationError* – if the init creation fails at some point

delete ()

Force delete root directory and its contents

kiwi.system.setup Module

class `kiwi.system.setup.SystemSetup` (*xml_state*, *root_dir*)

Bases: object

Implementation of system setup steps supported by kiwi

Kiwi is not responsible for the system configuration, however some setup steps needs to be performed in order to provide a minimal work environment inside of the image according to the desired image type.

Parameters

- **arch** (*str*) – platform.machine. The 32bit x86 platform is handled as 'ix86'
- **xml_state** (*object*) – instance of XMLState
- **description_dir** (*str*) – path to image description directory
- **derived_description_dir** – path to derived_description_dir boot image descriptions inherits data from the system image description, thus they are derived from another image description directory which is needed to e.g find system image archives, overlay files
- **root_dir** (*str*) – root directory path name

call_config_script ()

Call config.sh script chrooted

call_edit_boot_config_script (*filesystem*, *boot_part_id*, *working_directory=None*)

Call configured editbootconfig script _NON_ chrooted

Pass the boot filesystem name and the partition number of the boot partition as parameters to the call

Parameters

- **filesystem** (*str*) – boot filesystem name
- **boot_part_id** (*int*) – boot partition number
- **working_directory** (*str*) – directory name

call_edit_boot_install_script (*diskname*, *boot_device_node*, *working_directory=None*)

Call configured editbootinstall script _NON_ chrooted

Pass the disk file name and the device node of the boot partition as parameters to the call

Parameters

- **diskname** (*str*) – file path name
- **boot_device_node** (*str*) – boot device node name
- **working_directory** (*str*) – directory name

call_image_script ()

Call images.sh script chrooted

cleanup ()

Delete all traces of a kiwi description which are not required in the later image

create_fstab (*entries*)

Create etc/fstab from given list of entries

Also lookup for an optional fstab.append file which allows to append custom fstab entries to the final fstab. Once embedded the fstab.append file will be deleted

Parameters **entries** (*list*) – list of line entries for fstab

create_init_link_from_linuxrc ()

kiwi boot images provides the linuxrc script, however the kernel also expects an init executable to be present. This method creates a hard link to the linuxrc file

create_recovery_archive ()

Create a compressed recovery archive from the root tree for use with kiwi's recovery system. The method creates additional data into the image root filesystem which is deleted prior to the creation of a new recovery data set

export_modprobe_setup (*target_root_dir*)

Export etc/modprobe.d to given root_dir

Parameters **target_root_dir** (*str*) – path name

export_package_list (*target_dir*)

Export image package list as metadata reference used by the open builds service

Parameters **target_dir** (*str*) – path name

export_package_verification (*target_dir*)

Export package verification result as metadata reference used by the open builds service

Parameters **target_dir** (*str*) – path name

import_cdroot_files (*target_dir*)

Copy cdroot files from the image description to the specified target directory. Supported is a tar archive named config-cdroot.tar[.compression-postfix]

Parameters **target_dir** (*str*) – directory to unpack archive to

import_description ()

Import XML descriptions, custom scripts, archives and script helper methods

import_image_identifier ()

Create etc/ImageID identifier file

import_overlay_files (*follow_links=False*, *pre-serve_owner_group=False*)

Copy overlay files from the image description to the image root tree. Supported are a root/ directory or a root.tar.gz tarball. The root/ directory takes precedence over the tarball

Parameters

- **follow_links** (*bool*) – follow symlinks true/false
- **preserve_owner_group** (*bool*) – preserve permissions true/false

import_repositories_marked_as_imageinclude ()

Those <repository> sections which are marked with the imageinclude attribute should be permanently added to the image repository configuration

import_shell_environment (*profile*)

Create profile environment to let scripts consume information from the XML description.

Parameters **profile** (*object*) – instance of `Profile`

set_selinux_file_contexts (*security_context_file*)

Initialize the security context fields (extended attributes) on the files matching the `security_context_file`

Parameters **security_context_file** (*str*) – path file name

setup_groups ()

Add groups for configured users

setup_keyboard_map ()

Setup console keyboard

setup_locale ()

Setup UTF8 system wide locale

setup_machine_id ()

Setup systemd machine id

Empty out the machine id which was provided by the package installation process. This will instruct the dracut initrd code to create a new machine id. This way a golden image produces unique machine id's on first deployment and boot of the image.

Note: Requires dracut connected image type

This method must only be called if the image is of a type which gets booted via a dracut created initrd. Deleting the machine-id without the dracut initrd creating a new one produces an inconsistent system

setup_plymouth_splash ()

Setup the KIWI configured splash theme as default

The method uses the `plymouth-set-default-theme` tool to setup the theme for the plymouth splash system. Only in case the tool could be found in the image root, it is assumed plymouth splash is in use and the tool is called in a chroot operation

setup_timezone ()

Setup timezone symlink

setup_users ()

Add/Modify configured users

kiwi.system.shell Module

class `kiwi.system.shell.Shell`

Bases: `object`

Special character handling for shell evaluated code

classmethod `quote(message)`

Quote characters which have a special meaning for bash but should be used as normal characters. actually I had planned to use `pipes.quote` but it does not quote as I had expected it. e.g `'name_wit_a_$'` does not quote the `$` so we do it on our own for the scope of kiwi

Parameters `message` (*str*) – message text

Returns quoted text

Return type `str`

classmethod `quote_key_value_file(filename)`

Quote given input file which has to be of the form `key=value` to be able to become sourced by the shell

Parameters `filename` (*str*) – file path name

Returns quoted text

Return type `str`

classmethod `run_common_function(name, parameters)`

Run a function implemented in `config/functions.sh`

Parameters

- **name** (*str*) – function name
- **parameters** (*list*) – function arguments

kiwi.system.size Module

class `kiwi.system.size.SystemSize(source_dir)`

Bases: `object`

Provide source tree size information

Parameters `source_dir` (*str*) – source directory path name

accumulate_files()

Calculate sum of all files in the source tree

Returns number of files

Return type `int`

accumulate_mbyte_file_sizes(exclude=None)

Calculate data size of all data in the source tree

Parameters `exclude` (*list*) – list of paths to exclude

Returns mbytes

Return type `int`

customize (*size, requested_filesystem*)

Increase the sum of all file sizes by an empiric factor

Each filesystem has some overhead it needs to manage itself. Thus the plain data size is always smaller as the size of the container which embeds it. This method increases the given size by a filesystem specific empiric factor to ensure the given data size can be stored in a filesystem of the customized size

Parameters

- **size** (*int*) – mbsize to update
- **requested_filesystem** (*str*) – filesystem name

Returns mbytes

Return type int

kiwi.system.uri Module

class `kiwi.system.uri.Uri` (*uri, repo_type=None*)

Bases: `object`

Normalize url types available in a kiwi configuration into standard mime types

Parameters

- **repo_type** (*str*) – repository type name. Only needed if the uri is not enough to determine the repository type e.g for yast2 vs. rpm-md obs repositories
- **uri** (*str*) – URI, repository location, file
- **mount_stack** (*list*) – list of mounted locations
- **remote_uri_types** (*dict*) – dictionary of remote uri type names
- **local_uri_type** (*dict*) – dictionary of local uri type names

alias ()

Create hexdigest from URI as alias

If the repository definition from the XML description does not provide an alias, kiwi creates one for you. However it's better to assign a human readable alias in the XML configuration

Returns alias name as hexdigest

Return type str

credentials_file_name ()

Filename to store repository credentials

Returns credentials file name

Return type str

get_fragment()

Returns the fragment part of the URI.

Returns fragment part of the URI if any, None otherwise

Return type str, None

is_public()

Check if URI is considered to be publicly reachable

Returns True or False

Return type bool

is_remote()

Check if URI is a remote or local location

Returns True or False

Return type bool

translate(*check_build_environment=True*)

Translate repository location according to their URI type

Depending on the URI type the provided location needs to be adapted e.g loop mounted in case of an ISO or updated by the service URL in case of an open build-service project name

Raises *KiwiUriStyleUnknown* – if the uri scheme can't be detected, is unknown or it is inconsistent with the build environment

Parameters *check_build_environment* (*bool*) – specify if the uri translation should depend on the environment the build is called in. As of today this only effects the translation result if the image build happens inside of the Open Build Service

Return type str

kiwi.system.users Module

class *kiwi.system.users.Users* (*root_dir*)

Bases: object

Operations on users and groups in a root directory

Parameters *root_dir* (*str*) – root directory path name

group_add (*group_name*, *options*)

Add group with options

Parameters

- **group_name** (*str*) – group name
- **options** (*list*) – groupadd options

group_exists (*group_name*)

Check if group exists

Parameters **group_name** (*str*) – group name

Returns True or False

Return type bool

setup_home_for_user (*user_name*, *group_name*, *home_path*)

Setup user home directory

Parameters

- **user_name** (*str*) – user name
- **group_name** (*str*) – group name
- **home_path** (*str*) – path name

user_add (*user_name*, *options*)

Add user with options

Parameters

- **user_name** (*str*) – user name
- **options** (*list*) – useradd options

user_exists (*user_name*)

Check if user exists

Parameters **user_name** (*str*) – user name

Return type bool

user_modify (*user_name*, *options*)

Modify user with options

Parameters

- **user_name** (*str*) – user name
- **options** (*list*) – usermod options

Module Contents

kiwi.solver Package

Subpackages

kiwi.solver.repository Package

Submodules

kiwi.solver.repository.base Module

```
class kiwi.solver.repository.base.SolverRepositoryBase (uri,  
                                                         user=None,  
                                                         se-  
                                                         cret=None)
```

Bases: object

Base class interface for SAT solvable creation.

- **param object uri** Instance of `Uri`

```
create_repository_solvable (target_dir='/var/tmp/kiwi/satsolver')
```

Create SAT solvable for this repository from previously created intermediate solvables by merge and store the result solvable in the specified target_dir

Parameters **target_dir** (*str*) – path name

Returns file path to solvable

Return type str

```
download_from_repository (repo_source, target)
```

Download given source file from the repository and store it as target file

The repo_source location is used relative to the repository location and will be part of a mime type source like: `file://repo_path/repo_source`

Parameters

- **repo_source** (*str*) – source file in the repo
- **target** (*str*) – file path

Raises *KiwiUriOpenError* – if the download fails

```
is_uptodate (target_dir='/var/tmp/kiwi/satsolver')
```

Check if repository metadata is up to date

Returns True or False

Return type bool

```
timestamp ()
```

Return repository timestamp

The retrieval of the repository timestamp depends on the type of the repository and is therefore supposed to be implemented in the specialized Solver Repository classes. If no such implementation exists the method returns the value 'static' to indicate there is no timestamp information available.

Return type str

```
class kiwi.solver.repository.rpm_md.SolverRepositoryRpmMd (uri,  
                                                            user=None,  
                                                            se-  
                                                            cret=None)
```

Bases: *kiwi.solver.repository.base.SolverRepositoryBase*

Class for SAT solvable creation for rpm-md type repositories.

timestamp()

Get timestamp from the first primary metadata

Returns time value as text

Return type str

```
class kiwi.solver.repository.rpm_dir.SolverRepositoryRpmDir (uri,  
                                                             user=None,  
                                                             se-  
                                                             cret=None)
```

Bases: *kiwi.solver.repository.base.SolverRepositoryBase*

Class for SAT solvable creation for rpm_dir type repositories.

```
class kiwi.solver.repository.suse.SolverRepositorySUSE (uri,  
                                                         user=None,  
                                                         se-  
                                                         cret=None)
```

Bases: *kiwi.solver.repository.base.SolverRepositoryBase*

Class for SAT solvable creation for SUSE type repositories.

Module Contents

```
class kiwi.solver.repository.SolverRepository
```

Bases: object

Repository factory for creation of SAT solvables

- **param object uri** Instance of Uri

Submodules

kiwi.solver.sat Module

```
class kiwi.solver.sat.Sat
```

Bases: object

Sat Solver class to run package solver operations

The class uses SUSE's libsolvable plugin

add_repository (*solver_repository*)

Add a repository solvable to the pool. This basically add the required repository metadata which is needed to run a solver operation later.

Parameters **solver_repository** (*object*) – Instance of SolverRepository

solve (*job_names*, *skip_missing=False*, *ignore_recommended=True*)

Solve dependencies for the given job list. The list is allowed to contain element names of the following format:

- name describes a package name
- pattern:name describes a package collection name whose metadata type is called 'pattern' and stored as such in the repository metadata. Usually SUSE repos uses that
- group:name describes a package collection name whose metadata type is called 'group' and stored as such in the repository metadata. Usually RHEL/CentOS/Fedora repos uses that

Parameters

- **job_names** (*list*) – list of strings
- **skip_missing** (*bool*) – skip job if not found
- **ignore_recommended** (*bool*) – do not include recommended packages

Raises *KiwiSatSolverJobProblems* – if solver reports solving problems

Returns Transaction result information

Return type dict

Module Contents

kiwi.tasks package

Submodules

kiwi.tasks.base Module

class *kiwi.tasks.base.CliTask* (*should_perform_task_setup=True*)

Bases: object

Base class for all task classes, loads the task and provides the interface to the command options and the XML description

Attributes

- **should_perform_task_setup** Indicates if the task should perform the setup steps which covers the following task configurations: * setup debug level * setup logfile * setup color output

load_xml_description (*description_directory*)

Load, upgrade, validate XML description

Attributes

- **xml_data** instance of XML data toplevel domain (image), stateless data
- **config_file** used config file path
- **xml_state** Instance of XMLState, stateful data

quadruple_token (*option*)

Helper method for commandline options of the form `–option a,b,c,d`

Make sure to provide a common result for option values which separates the information in a comma separated list of values

Returns common option value representation

Return type str

sextuple_token (*option*)

Helper method for commandline options of the form `–option a,b,c,d,e,f`

Make sure to provide a common result for option values which separates the information in a comma separated list of values

Returns common option value representation

Return type str

kiwi.tasks.result_bundle Module

class `kiwi.tasks.result_bundle.ResultBundleTask` (*should_perform_task_setup=True*)

Bases: `kiwi.tasks.base.CliTask`

Implements result bundler

Attributes

- **manual** Instance of Help

process ()

Create result bundle from the image build results in the specified target directory. Each result image will contain the specified bundle identifier as part of its filename. Uncompressed image files will also become xz compressed and a sha sum will be created from every result image

kiwi.tasks.result_list Module

class `kiwi.tasks.result_list.ResultListTask` (*should_perform_task_setup=True*)

Bases: `kiwi.tasks.base.CliTask`

Implements result listing

Attributes

- **manual** Instance of Help

process()

List result information from a previous system command

kiwi.tasks.system_build Module

class `kiwi.tasks.system_build.SystemBuildTask` (*should_perform_task_setup=True*)
Bases: `kiwi.tasks.base.CliTask`

Implements building of system images

Attributes

- **manual** Instance of Help

process()

Build a system image from the specified description. The build command combines the prepare and create commands

kiwi.tasks.system_create Module

class `kiwi.tasks.system_create.SystemCreateTask` (*should_perform_task_setup=True*)
Bases: `kiwi.tasks.base.CliTask`

Implements creation of system images

Attributes

- **manual** Instance of Help

process()

Create a system image from the specified root directory the root directory is the result of a system prepare command

kiwi.tasks.system_prepare Module

class `kiwi.tasks.system_prepare.SystemPrepareTask` (*should_perform_task_setup=True*)
Bases: `kiwi.tasks.base.CliTask`

Implements preparation and installation of a new root system

Attributes

- **manual** Instance of Help

process()

Prepare and install a new system for chroot access

`kiwi.tasks.system_update` Module

class `kiwi.tasks.system_update.SystemUpdateTask` (*should_perform_task_setup=True*)

Bases: `kiwi.tasks.base.CliTask`

Implements update and maintenance of root systems

Attributes

- **manual** Instance of Help

process ()

Update root system with latest repository updates and optionally allow to add or delete packages. the options to add or delete packages can be used multiple times

Module Contents

`kiwi.utils` Package

Submodules

`kiwi.utils.checksum` Module

class `kiwi.utils.block.BlockID` (*device*)

Bases: `object`

Get information from a block device

Parameters **device** (*str*) – block device node name name

get_blkid (*id_type*)

Retrieve information for specified metadata ID from block device

Parameters **id_type** (*string*) – metadata ID, see `man blkid` for details

Returns ID of the block device

Return type `str`

get_filesystem ()

Retrieve filesystem type from block device

Returns filesystem type

Return type `str`

get_label ()

Retrieve filesystem label from block device

Returns block device label

Return type `str`

get_uuid()

Retrieve filesystem uuid from block device

Returns uuid for the filesystem of the block device

Return type str

kiwi.utils.block Module

class kiwi.utils.checksum.**Checksum**(*source_filename*)

Bases: object

Manage checksum creation for files

Parameters

- **source_filename** (*str*) – source file name to build checksum for
- **checksum_filename** (*str*) – target file with checksum information

matches (*checksum, filename*)

Compare given checksum with reference checksum stored in the provided filename.
If the checksum matches the method returns True, or False in case it does not match

Parameters

- **checksum** (*str*) – checksum string to compare
- **filename** (*str*) – filename containing checksum

Returns True or False

Return type bool

md5 (*filename=None*)

Create md5 checksum

Parameters **filename** (*str*) – filename for checksum

Returns checksum

Return type str

sha256 (*filename=None*)

Create sha256 checksum

Parameters **filename** (*str*) – filename for checksum

kiwi.utils.compress Module

class kiwi.utils.compress.**Compress**(*source_filename*,
 keep_source_on_compress=False)

Bases: object

File compression / decompression

Parameters

- **keep_source** (*bool*) – Request to keep the uncompressed source
- **source_filename** (*str*) – Source file name to compress
- **supported_zipper** (*list*) – List of supported compression tools
- **compressed_filename** (*str*) – Compressed file name path with compression suffix
- **uncompressed_filename** (*str*) – Uncompressed file name path

get_format ()

Detect compression format

Returns compression format name

Return type str

gzip ()

Create gzip(max compression) compressed file

uncompress (*temporary=False*)

Uncompress with format autodetection

By default the original source file will be changed into the uncompressed variant. If temporary is set to True a temporary file is created instead

Parameters **temporary** (*bool*) – uncompress to a temporary file

xz (*options=None*)

Create XZ compressed file

Parameters **options** (*list*) – custom xz compression options

kiwi.utils.sync Module

class kiwi.utils.sync.DataSync (*source_dir, target_dir*)

Bases: object

Sync data from a source directory to a target directory using the rsync protocol

Parameters

- **source_dir** (*str*) – source directory path name
- **target_dir** (*str*) – target directory path name

sync_data (*options=None, exclude=None*)

Sync data from source to target using rsync

Parameters

- **options** (*list*) – rsync options
- **exclude** (*list*) – file patterns to exclude

target_supports_extended_attributes ()

Check if the target directory supports extended filesystem attributes

Returns True or False

Return type bool

kiwi.utils.sysconfig Module

class kiwi.utils.sysconfig.**SysConfig** (*source_file*)

Bases: object

Read and Write sysconfig style files

Parameters **source_file** (*str*) – source file path

write ()

Write back source file with changed content but in same order

Module Contents

kiwi.volume_manager Package

Submodules

kiwi.volume_manager.base Module

class kiwi.volume_manager.base.**VolumeManagerBase** (*device_provider*,
root_dir,
volumes, *custom_args=None*)

Bases: *kiwi.storage.device_provider.DeviceProvider*

Implements base class for volume management interface

Parameters

- **mountpoint** (*str*) – root mountpoint for volumes
- **device_provider** (*object*) – instance of a *DeviceProvider* subclass
- **root_dir** (*str*) – root directory path name
- **volumes** (*list*) – list of volumes from *XMLState::get_volumes()*
- **volume_group** (*str*) – volume group name

- **volume_map** (*map*) – map volume name to device node
- **mount_list** (*list*) – list of volume MountManager's
- **device** (*str*) – storage device node name
- **custom_args** (*dict*) – custom volume manager arguments for all volume manager and filesystem specific tasks
- **custom_filesystem_args** (*list*) – custom filesystem creation and mount arguments, subset of the custom_args information suitable to be passed to a FileSystem instance

Raises *KiwiVolumeManagerSetupError* – if the given root_dir doesn't exist

apply_attributes_on_volume (*toplevel, volume*)

create_volume_paths_in_root_dir ()

Implements creation of volume paths in the given root directory

create_volumes (*filesystem_name*)

Implements creation of volumes

Implementation in specialized volume manager class required

Parameters *filesystem_name* (*str*) – unused

get_canonical_volume_list ()

Implements hierarchical sorting of volumes according to their paths and provides information about the volume configured as the one eating all the rest space

Returns list of canonical_volume_type tuples

Return type list

get_device ()

Dictionary with instance of MappedDevice for the root device node

Returns root device map

Return type dict

get_fstab (*persistence_type, filesystem_name*)

Implements setup of the fstab entries. The method should return a list of fstab compatible entries

Parameters

- **persistence_type** (*str*) – unused
- **filesystem_name** (*str*) – unused

get_volume_mbsize (*volume, all_volumes, filesystem_name, image_type=None*)

Implements size lookup for the given path and desired filesystem according to the specified size type

Parameters

- **volume** (*tuple*) – volume to check size for
- **all_volumes** (*list*) – list of all volume tuples
- **filesystem_name** (*str*) – filesystem name
- **image_type** – build type name

Returns mbsize

Return type int

get_volumes ()

Implements return of dictionary of volumes and their mount options

is_loop ()

Check if storage provider is loop based

The information is taken from the storage provider. If the storage provider is loop based the volume manager is it too

Returns True of False

Return type bool

mount_volumes ()

Implements mounting of all volumes below one master directory

Implementation in specialized volume manager class required

post_init (*custom_args*)

Post initialization method

Implementation in specialized volume manager class if required

Parameters **custom_args** (*dict*) – unused

set_property_readonly_root ()

Implements setup of read-only root property

setup (*name=None*)

Implements setup required prior to the creation of volumes

Implementation in specialized volume manager class required

Parameters **name** (*str*) – unused

setup_mountpoint ()

Implements creation of a master directory holding the mounts of all volumes

sync_data (*exclude=None*)

Implements sync of root directory to mounted volumes

Parameters **exclude** (*list*) – file patterns to exclude

umount_volumes ()

Implements unmounting of all volumes

Implementation in specialized volume manager class required

`kiwi.volume_manager.btrfs` Module

```
class kiwi.volume_manager.btrfs.VolumeManagerBtrfs (device_provider,  
                                                    root_dir,  
                                                    volumes,  
                                                    cus-  
                                                    tom_args=None)
```

Bases: `kiwi.volume_manager.base.VolumeManagerBase`

Implements btrfs sub-volume management

Parameters

- **subvol_mount_list** (*list*) – list of mounted btrfs subvolumes
- **toplevel_mount** (*object*) – MountManager for root mount-point

create_volumes (*filesystem_name*)

Create configured btrfs subvolumes

Any btrfs subvolume is of the same btrfs filesystem. There is no way to have different filesystems per btrfs subvolume. Thus the `filesystem_name` has no effect for btrfs

Parameters **filesystem_name** (*string*) – unused

get_fstab (*persistence_type='by-label', filesystem_name=None*)

Implements creation of the fstab entries. The method returns a list of fstab compatible entries

Parameters

- **persistence_type** (*string*) – by-label | by-uuid
- **filesystem_name** (*string*) – unused

Returns list of fstab entries

Return type list

get_volumes ()

Return dict of volumes

Returns volumes dictionary

Return type dict

mount_volumes ()

Mount btrfs subvolumes

post_init (*custom_args*)

Post initialization method

Store custom btrfs initialization arguments

Parameters **custom_args** (*list*) – custom btrfs volume manager arguments

set_property_readonly_root()

Sets the root volume to be a readonly filesystem

setup (*name=None*)

Setup btrfs volume management

In case of btrfs a toplevel(@) subvolume is created and marked as default volume. If snapshots are activated via the custom_args the setup method also created the @/snapshots/1/snapshot subvolumes. There is no concept of a volume manager name, thus the name argument is not used for btrfs

Parameters **name** (*string*) – unused

sync_data (*exclude=None*)

Sync data into btrfs filesystem

If snapshots are activated the root filesystem is synced into the first snapshot

Parameters **exclude** (*list*) – files to exclude from sync

umount_volumes()

Umount btrfs subvolumes

Returns True if all subvolumes are successfully unmounted

Return type bool

kiwi.volume_manager.lvm Module

```
class kiwi.volume_manager.lvm.VolumeManagerLVM(device_provider,  
                                              root_dir,    vol-  
                                              umes,      cus-  
                                              tom_args=None)
```

Bases: *kiwi.volume_manager.base.VolumeManagerBase*

Implements LVM volume management

create_volumes (*filesystem_name*)

Create configured lvm volumes and filesystems

All volumes receive the same filesystem

Parameters **filesystem_name** (*str*) – volumes filesystem name

get_device()

Dictionary of MappedDevice instances per volume

Note: The mapping requires an explicit create_volumes() call

Returns root plus volume device map

Return type dict

get_fstab (*persistency_type, filesystem_name*)

Implements creation of the fstab entries. The method returns a list of fstab compatible entries

Parameters

- **persistency_type** (*str*) – unused
- **filesystem_name** (*str*) – volumes filesystem name

Returns fstab entries

Return type list

get_volumes ()

Return dict of volumes

Returns volumes dictionary

Return type dict

mount_volumes ()

Mount lvm volumes

post_init (*custom_args*)

Post initialization method

Store custom lvm initialization arguments

Parameters **custom_args** (*list*) – custom lvm volume manager arguments

setup (*volume_group_name='systemVG'*)

Setup lvm volume management

In case of LVM a new volume group is created on a PV initialized storage device

Parameters **name** (*str*) – volume group name

umount_volumes ()

Umount lvm volumes

Returns True if all subvolumes are successfully unmounted

Return type bool

Module Contents

class `kiwi.volume_manager.VolumeManager`

Bases: `object`

VolumeManager factory

Parameters

- **name** (*str*) – volume management name
- **device_provider** (*object*) – instance of a class based on `DeviceProvider`
- **root_dir** (*str*) – root directory path name

- **volumes** (*list*) – list of volumes from `XMLState::get_volumes()`
- **custom_args** (*dict*) – dictionary of custom volume manager arguments

6.2.2 Submodules

6.2.3 kiwi.app Module

class `kiwi.app.App`

Bases: `object`

Implements creation of task instances

Each task class implements a process method which is called when constructing an instance of App

6.2.4 kiwi.cli Module

class `kiwi.cli.Cli`

Bases: `object`

Implements the main command line interface

An instance of the Cli class builds the entry point for the application and implements methods to load further command plugins which itself provides their own command line interface

get_command()

Extract selected command name

Returns command name

Return type str

get_command_args()

Extract argument dict for selected command

Returns

Contains dictionary of command arguments

```
{  
    '-command-option': 'value'  
}
```

Return type dict

get_global_args()

Extract argument dict for global arguments

Returns

Contains dictionary of global arguments

```
{
    '-global-option': 'value'
}
```

Return type dict

get_servicename()

Extract service name from argument parse result

Returns service name

Return type str

invoke_kiwicompat(*compat_args*)

Execute kiwicompat with provided legacy KIWI command line arguments

Example:

```
invoke_kiwicompat(
    '--build', 'description', '--type', 'vmx',
    '-d', 'destination'
)
```

Parameters **compat_args** (*list*) – legacy kiwi command arguments

load_command()

Loads task class plugin according to service and command name

Returns importlib loaded module

Return type object

show_and_exit_on_help_request()

Execute man to show the selected manual page

6.2.5 kiwi.command Module

class `kiwi.command.Command`

Bases: `object`

Implements command invocation

An instance of `Command` provides methods to invoke external commands in blocking and non blocking mode. Control of stdout and stderr is given to the caller

classmethod `call`(*command*, *custom_env=None*)

Execute a program and return an io file handle pair back. stdout and stderr are both on different channels. The caller must read from the output file handles in order to actually run the command. This can be done using the `CommandIterator` from `command_process`

Example:

```
process = Command.call(['ls', '-l'])
```

Parameters

- **command** (*list*) – command and arguments
- **custom_env** (*list*) – custom os.environ

Returns

Contains process results in command type

```
command(  
    output='string', output_available=bool,  
    error='string', error_available=bool,  
    process=subprocess  
)
```

Return type namedtuple

classmethod **run** (*command*, *custom_env=None*, *raise_on_error=True*)

Execute a program and block the caller. The return value is a hash containing the stdout, stderr and return code information. Unless `raise_on_error` is set to false an exception is thrown if the command exits with an error code not equal to zero

Example:

```
result = Command.run(['ls', '-l'])
```

Parameters

- **command** (*list*) – command and arguments
- **custom_env** (*list*) – custom os.environ
- **raise_on_error** (*bool*) – control error behaviour

Returns

Contains call results in command type

```
command(output='string', error='string',   
↪returncode=int)
```

Return type namedtuple

6.2.6 kiwi.command_process Module

class `kiwi.command_process.CommandIterator` (*command*)

Bases: object

Implements an Iterator for Instances of Command

Parameters **command** (*subprocess*) – instance of subprocess

get_error_code ()

Provide return value from processed command

Returns errorcode

Return type int

get_error_output ()

Provide data which was sent to the stderr channel

Returns stderr data

Return type str

get_pid ()

Provide process ID of command while running

Returns pid

Return type int

kill ()

Send kill signal SIGTERM to command process

class `kiwi.command_process.CommandProcess` (*command*,
log_topic='system')

Bases: object

Implements processing of non blocking Command calls

Provides methods to iterate over non blocking instances of the Command class with and without progress information

Parameters

- **command** (*subprocess*) – instance of subprocess
- **log_topic** (*string*) – topic string for logging

create_match_method (*method*)

create a matcher function pointer which calls the given method as method(item_to_match, data) on dereference

Parameters **method** (*function*) – function reference

Returns function pointer

Return type object

poll ()

Iterate over process, raise on error and log output

poll_and_watch ()

Iterate over process don't raise on error and log stdout and stderr

poll_show_progress (*items_to_complete*, *match_method*)

Iterate over process and show progress in percent raise on error and log output

Parameters

- **items_to_complete** (*list*) – all items
- **match_method** (*function*) – method matching item

6.2.7 kiwi.defaults Module

class `kiwi.defaults.Defaults`

Bases: `object`

Implements default values

Provides class methods for default values and state information

get (*key*)

Implements get method for profile elements

Parameters **key** (*string*) – profile keyname

Returns key value

Return type `str`

classmethod **get_archive_image_types** ()

Provides list of supported archive image types

Returns archive names

Return type `list`

classmethod **get_boot_image_description_path** ()

Provides the path to find custom kiwi boot descriptions

Returns directory path

Return type `str`

classmethod **get_boot_image_strip_file** ()

Provides the file path to bootloader strip metadata. This file contains information about the files and directories automatically striped out from the kiwi initrd

Returns file path

Return type `str`

classmethod **get_buildservice_env_name** ()

Provides the base name of the environment file in a buildservice worker

Returns file basename

Return type `str`

classmethod **get_common_functions_file** ()

Provides the file path to config functions metadata.

This file contains bash functions used for system configuration or in the boot code from the kiwi initrd

Returns file path

Return type str

classmethod `get_container_compression()`

Provides default container compression algorithm

Returns name

Return type str

classmethod `get_container_image_types()`

Provides list of supported container image types

Returns container names

Return type list

classmethod `get_default_boot_mbytes()`

Provides default boot partition size in mbytes

Returns mbsize value

Return type int

classmethod `get_default_boot_timeout_seconds()`

Provides default boot timeout in seconds

Returns seconds

Return type int

classmethod `get_default_container_name()`

Provides the default container name.

Returns name

Return type str

classmethod `get_default_container_tag()`

Provides the default container tag.

Returns tag

Return type str

classmethod `get_default_disk_start_sector()`

Provides the default initial disk sector for the first disk partition.

Returns sector value

Return type int

classmethod `get_default_efi_boot_mbytes()`

Provides default EFI partition size in mbytes

Returns mbsize value

Return type int

classmethod `get_default_efi_partition_table_type()`

Provides the default partition table type for efi firmwares.

Returns partition table type name

Return type str

classmethod `get_default_firmware(arch)`

Provides default firmware for specified architecture

Parameters **arch** (*string*) – platform.machine

Returns firmware name

Return type str

classmethod `get_default_inode_size()`

Provides default size of inodes in bytes. This is only relevant for inode based filesystems

Returns bytesize value

Return type int

classmethod `get_default_legacy_bios_mbytes()`

Provides default size of bios_grub partition in mbytes

Returns mbsize value

Return type int

classmethod `get_default_live_iso_root_filesystem()`

Provides default live iso root filesystem type

Returns filesystem name

Return type str

classmethod `get_default_live_iso_type()`

Provides default live iso union type

Returns live iso type

Return type str

classmethod `get_default_packager_tool(package_manager)`

Provides the packager tool according to the package manager

Parameters **package_manager** (*string*) – package manger name

Returns packager tool binary name

Return type str

classmethod `get_default_prep_mbytes()`

Provides default size of prep partition in mbytes

Returns mbsize value

Return type int

classmethod `get_default_rpmdb_path()`

Returns the default path of the rpm database.

Returns rpmdb default path

Return type str

classmethod `get_default_uri_type()`

Provides default URI type

Absolute path specifications used in the context of an URI will apply the specified default mime type

Returns URI mime type

Return type str

classmethod `get_default_video_mode()`

Provides 800x600 default video mode as hex value for the kernel

Returns vesa video kernel hex value

Return type str

classmethod `get_default_volume_group_name()`

Provides default LVM volume group name

Returns name

Return type str

classmethod `get_disk_format_types()`

Provides supported disk format types

Returns disk types

Return type list

classmethod `get_disk_image_types()`

Provides supported disk image types

Returns disk image type names

Return type list

classmethod `get_dracut_conf_name()`

Provides file path of dracut config file to be used with KIWI

Returns file path name

Return type str

classmethod `get_ec2_capable_firmware_names()`

Provides list of EC2 capable firmware names. These are those for which kiwi supports the creation of disk images bootable within the Amazon EC2 public cloud

Returns firmware names

Return type list

classmethod `get_efi_capable_firmware_names()`

Provides list of EFI capable firmware names. These are those for which kiwi supports the creation of an EFI bootable disk image

Returns firmware names

Return type list

classmethod `get_efi_image_name(arch)`

Provides architecture specific EFI boot binary name

Parameters `arch` (*string*) – platform.machine

Returns name

Return type str

classmethod `get_efi_module_directory_name(arch)`

Provides architecture specific EFI directory name which stores the EFI binaries for the desired architecture.

Parameters `arch` (*string*) – platform.machine

Returns directory name

Return type str

classmethod `get_exclude_list_for_root_data_sync()`

Provides the list of files or folders that are created by KIWI for its own purposes. Those files should be not be included in the resulting image.

Returns list of file and directory names

Return type list

classmethod `get_failsafe_kernel_options()`

Provides failsafe boot kernel options

Returns

list of kernel options

['option=value', 'option']

Return type list

classmethod `get_filesystem_image_types()`

Provides list of supported filesystem image types

Returns filesystem names

Return type list

classmethod `get_firmware_types()`

Provides supported architecture specific firmware types

Returns firmware types per architecture

Return type dict

classmethod `get_grub_basic_modules` (*multiboot*)

Provides list of basic grub modules

Parameters `multiboot` (*bool*) – grub multiboot mode

Returns list of module names

Return type list

classmethod `get_grub_bios_modules` (*multiboot=False*)

Provides list of grub bios modules

Parameters `multiboot` (*bool*) – grub multiboot mode

Returns list of module names

Return type list

classmethod `get_grub_boot_directory_name` (*lookup_path*)

Provides grub2 data directory name in boot/ directory

Depending on the distribution the grub2 boot path could be either boot/grub2 or boot/grub. The method will decide for the correct base directory name according to the name pattern of the installed grub2 tools

Returns directory basename

Return type str

classmethod `get_grub_efi_modules` (*multiboot=False*)

Provides list of grub efi modules

Parameters `multiboot` (*bool*) – grub multiboot mode

Returns list of module names

Return type list

classmethod `get_grub_ofw_modules` ()

Provides list of grub ofw modules (ppc)

Returns list of module names

Return type list

classmethod `get_grub_path` (*lookup_path*)

Provides grub install path

Depending on the distribution grub could be installed below a grub2 or grub directory. Therefore this information needs to be dynamically looked up

Parameters `lookup_path` (*string*) – path name

Returns grub2 install directory path name

Return type str

classmethod `get_imported_root_image` (*root_dir*)

Provides the path to an imported root system image

If the image description specified a `derived_from` attribute the file from this attribute is copied into the `root_dir` using the name as provided by this method

Parameters `root_dir` (*string*) – image root directory

Returns file path name

Return type `str`

classmethod `get_install_volume_id()`

Provides default value for ISO volume ID for install media

Returns name

Return type `str`

classmethod `get_iso_boot_path()`

Provides arch specific relative path to boot files on kiwi iso filesystems

Returns relative path name

Return type `str`

classmethod `get_iso_tool_category()`

Provides default iso tool category

Returns name

Return type `str`

classmethod `get_live_dracut_module_from_flag(flag_name)`

Provides `flag_name` to dracut module name map

Depending on the value of the `flag` attribute in the KIWI image description a specific dracut module needs to be selected

Returns dracut module name

Return type `str`

classmethod `get_live_image_types()`

Provides supported live image types

Returns live image type names

Return type `list`

classmethod `get_live_iso_persistent_boot_options(persistent_filesystem=None)`

Provides list of boot options passed to the dracut kiwi-live module to setup persistent writing

Returns list of boot options

Return type `list`

classmethod `get_lvm_overhead_mbytes()`

Provides empiric LVM overhead size in mbytes

Returns mbsize value

Return type int

classmethod `get_min_volume_mbytes()`

Provides default minimum LVM volume size in mbytes

Returns mbsize value

Return type int

classmethod `get_network_image_types()`

Provides supported pxe image types

Returns pxe image type names

Return type list

classmethod `get_obs_download_server_url()`

Provides the default download server url hosting the public open builds service repositories

Returns url path

Return type str

classmethod `get_preparer()`

Provides ISO preparer name

Returns name

Return type str

classmethod `get_publisher()`

Provides ISO publisher name

Returns name

Return type str

classmethod `get_recovery_spare_mbytes()`

Provides spare size of recovery partition in mbytes

Returns mbsize value

Return type int

classmethod `get_s390_disk_block_size()`

Provides the default block size for s390 storage disks

Returns blocksize value

Return type int

classmethod `get_s390_disk_type()`

Provides the default disk type for s390 storage disks

Returns type name

Return type str

classmethod `get_schema_file()`

Provides file path to kiwi RelaxNG schema

Returns file path

Return type str

classmethod `get_shared_cache_location()`

Provides the shared cache location

This is a directory which shares data from the image buildsystem host with the image root system. The location is returned as an absolute path stripped off by the leading '/'. This is because the path is transparently used on the host /<cache-dir> and inside of the image imageroot/<cache-dir>

Returns directory path

Return type str

classmethod `get_shim_loader(root_path)`

Provides shim loader file path

Searches distribution specific locations to find shim.efi below the given root path

Parameters `root_path` (*string*) – image root path

Returns file path or None

Return type str

classmethod `get_shim_vendor_directory(root_path)`

Provides shim vendor directory

Searches distribution specific locations to find shim.efi below the given root path and return the directory name to the file found

Parameters `root_path` (*string*) – image root path

Returns directory path or None

Return type str

classmethod `get_signed_grub_loader(root_path)`

Provides shim signed grub loader file path

Searches distribution specific locations to find grub.efi below the given root path

Parameters `root_path` (*string*) – image root path

Returns file path or None

Return type str

classmethod `get_snapper_config_template_file()`

Provides the default configuration template file for snapper

Returns file

Return type str

classmethod `get_solvable_location()`

Provides the directory to store SAT solvables for repositories. The solvable files are used to perform package dependency and metadata resolution

Returns directory path

Return type str

classmethod `get_unsigned_grub_loader(root_path)`

Provides unsigned grub efi loader file path

Searches distribution specific locations to find grub.efi below the given root path

Parameters `root_path` (*string*) – image root path

Returns file path or None

Return type str

classmethod `get_video_mode_map()`

Provides video mode map

Assign a tuple to each kernel vesa hex id for each of the supported bootloaders

Returns

video type map

```
{ 'kernel_hex_mode': video_type(grub2='mode', ↵  
↵isolinux='mode') }
```

Return type dict

classmethod `get_volume_id()`

Provides default value for ISO volume ID

Returns name

Return type str

classmethod `get_xsl_stylesheet_file()`

Provides the file path to the KIWI XSLT style sheets

Returns file path

Return type str

classmethod `get_xz_compression_options()`

Provides compression options for the xz compressor

Returns

Contains list of options

```
[ '-option=value' ]
```

Return type list

classmethod `is_buildservice_worker()`

Checks if build host is an open buildservice machine

The presence of `/.buildenv` on the build host indicates we are building inside of the open builds service

Returns True if obs worker, else False

Return type bool

classmethod `project_file(filename)`

Provides the python module base directory search path

The method uses the `resource_filename` method to identify files and directories from the application

Parameters `filename` (*string*) – relative project file

Returns absolute file path name

Return type str

classmethod `set_python_default_encoding_to_utf8()`

Set python default encoding to utf-8 if not already done

This is not a safe operation since `sys.setdefaultencoding()` was removed from `sys` on purpose when Python starts. Reenabling it and changing the default encoding can break code that relies on `ascii` being the default. Within the scope of `kiwi` the operation is safe because all data is expected to be utf-8 everywhere and considered a bug if this is not the case

to_profile (*profile*)

Implements method to add list of profile keys and their values to the specified instance of a Profile class

Parameters `profile` (*object*) – Profile instance

6.2.8 kiwi.exceptions Module

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiArchiveSetupError(message)`

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if an unsupported image archive type is used.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiArchiveTarError(message)`

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if impossible to determine which tar command version is installed on the underlying system

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiBootImageDumpError(message)`

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if an instance of `BootImage*` can not be serialized on as file via pickle dump

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiBootImageSetupError(message)`

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if an unsupported initrd system type is used.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiBootLoaderConfigSetupError` (*message*)
Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if a configuration for an unsupported bootloader is requested.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiBootLoaderGrubDataError` (*message*)
Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if no grub installation was found.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiBootLoaderGrubFontError` (*message*)
Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if no grub unicode font was found.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiBootLoaderGrubInstallError` (*message*)
Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if grub install to master boot record has failed.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiBootLoaderGrubModulesError` (*message*)
Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the synchronisation of modules from the grub installation to the boot space has failed.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiBootLoaderGrubPlatformError` (*message*)
Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if an attempt was made to use grub on an unsupported platform.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiBootLoaderGrubSecureBootError` (*message*)
Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the Microsoft signed shim loader or grub2 loader could not be found in the image root system

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiBootLoaderInstallSetupError` (*message*)
Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if an installation for an unsupported bootloader is requested.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiBootLoaderIsoLinuxPlatformError` (*message*)
Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if an attempt was made to use isolinux on an unsupported platform.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiBootLoaderTargetError` (*message*)
Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the target to read the bootloader path from is not a disk or an iso image.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiBootLoaderZiplInstallError` (*message*)
Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the installation of zipl has failed.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiBootLoaderZiplPlatformError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if a configuration for an unsupported zipl architecture is requested.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiBootLoaderZiplSetupError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the data set to configure the zipl bootloader is incomplete.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiBootStrapPhaseFailed` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the bootstrap phase of the system prepare command has failed.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiBundleError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the system bundle command has failed.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiCommandCapabilitiesError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception is raised when some the CommandCapabilities methods fails, usually meaning there is some issue trying to parse some command output.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiCommandError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if an external command called via a Command instance has returned with an exit code `!= 0` or could not be called at all.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiCommandNotFound` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiCommandError`

Exception raised if any executable command cannot be found in the environment PATH variable.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiCommandNotLoaded` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if a kiwi command task module could not be loaded.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiCompatError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the given kiwi compatibility command line could not be understood by the compat option parser.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiCompressionFormatUnknown` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the compression format of the data could not be detected.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiConfigFileNotFound` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if no kiwi XML description was found.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiContainerBuilderError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception is raised when something fails during a container image build procedure.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiContainerImageSetupError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if an attempt to create a container instance for an unsupported container type is performed.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiContainerSetupError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if an error in the creation of the container archive happened.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiDataStructureError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the XML description failed to parse the data structure.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiDebootstrapError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if not enough user data to call debootstrap were provided or the debootstrap has failed.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiDecodingError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception is raised on decoding literals failure

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiDescriptionConflict` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if both, a description file and `xml_content` is provided

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiDescriptionInvalid` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the XML description failed to validate the XML schema.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiDeviceProviderError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if a storage provide is asked for its managed device but no such device exists.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiDiskBootImageError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if a kiwi boot image does not provide the requested data, e.g kernel, or hypervisor files.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiDiskFormatSetupError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if an attempt was made to create a disk format instance of an unsupported disk format.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiDiskGeometryError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the disk geometry (partition table) could not be read or evaluated against their expected geometry and capabilities.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiDistributionNameError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the distribution name could not be found. The information is extracted from the boot attribute of the XML description. If no boot attribute is present or does not match the naming conventions the exception is raised.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError` (*message*)

Bases: `Exception`

Base class to handle all known exceptions

Specific exceptions are implemented as sub classes of `KiwiError`

Attributes

Parameters `message` (*string*) – Exception message text

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiExtensionError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if an extension section of the same namespace is used multiple times as toplevel section within the extension section. Each extension must have a single toplevel entry point qualified by its namespace

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiFileNotFound` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the requested file could not be found.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiFileSystemSetupError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if an attempt was made to build an unsupported or unspecified filesystem.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiFileSystemSyncError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the data sync from the system into the loop mounted filesystem image failed.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiFormatSetupError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the requested disk format could not be created.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiHelpNoCommandGiven` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the request for the help page is executed without a command to show the help for.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiImageResizeError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the request to resize a disk image failed. Reasons could be a missing raw disk reference or a wrong size specification.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiImportDescriptionError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the XML description data and scripts could not be imported into the root of the image.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiInstallBootImageError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the required files to boot an installation image could not be found, e.g kernel or hypervisor.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiInstallMediaError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if a request for an installation media is made but the system image type is not an oem type.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiInstallPhaseFailed` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the install phase of a system prepare command has failed.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiIsoLoaderError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if no isolinux loader file could be found.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiIsoMetadataError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if an inconsistency in the ISO header was found such like invalid eltorito specification or a broken path table.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiIsoToolError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if an iso helper tool such as isoinfo could not be found on the build system.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiKernelLookupError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the search for the kernel image file failed

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiLiveBootImageError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if an attempt was made to use an unsupported live iso type.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiLoadCommandUndefined` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if no command is specified for a given service on the commandline.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiLogFileSetupFailed` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the log file could not be created.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiLoopSetupError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if not enough user data to create a loop device is specified.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiLuksSetupError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if not enough user data is provided to setup the luks encryption on the given device.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiMappedDeviceError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the device to become mapped does not exist.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiMountKernelFileSystemsError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if a kernel filesystem such as proc or sys could not be mounted.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiMountSharedDirectoryError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the host <-> image shared directory could not be mounted.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiNotImplementedError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if a functionality is not yet implemented.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiPackageManagerSetupError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if an attempt was made to create a package manager instance for an unsupported package manager.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiPackagesDeletePhaseFailed` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the packages deletion phase in system prepare fails.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiPartitionerGptFlagError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if an attempt was made to set an unknown partition flag for an entry in the GPT table.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiPartitionerMsDosFlagError` (*message*)
Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if an attempt was made to set an unknown partition flag for an entry in the MSDOS table.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiPartitionerSetupError` (*message*)
Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if an attempt was made to create an instance of a partitioner for an unsupported partitioner.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiPrivilegesError` (*message*)
Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if root privileges are required but not granted.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiProfileNotFound` (*message*)
Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if a specified profile does not exist in the XML configuration.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiPxeBootImageError` (*message*)
Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if a required boot file e.g the kernel could not be found in the process of building a pxe image.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiRaidSetupError` (*message*)
Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if invalid or not enough user data is provided to create a raid array on the specified storage device.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiRepoTypeUnknown` (*message*)
Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if an unsupported repository type is specified for the corresponding package manager.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiRepositorySetupError` (*message*)
Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if an attempt was made to create an instance of a repository for an unsupported package manager.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiRequestError` (*message*)
Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if a package request could not be processed by the corresponding package manager instance.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiRequestedTypeError` (*message*)
Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if an attempt was made to build an image for an unsupported image type.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiResizeRawDiskError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if an attempt was made to resize the image disk to a smaller size than the current one. Simply shrinking a disk image file is not possible without data corruption because the partitions were setup to use the entire disk geometry as it fits into the file. A successful shrinking operation would require the filesystems and the partition table to be reduced which is not done by the provided simple storage resize method. In addition without the user overwriting the disk size in the XML setup, kiwi will calculate the minimum required size in order to store the data. Thus in almost all cases it will not be possible to store the data in a smaller disk.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiResultError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the image build result pickle information could not be created or loaded.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiRootDirExists` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the specified image root directory already exists and should not be re-used.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiRootImportError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception is raised when something fails during the root import procedure.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiRootInitCreationError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the initialization of a new image root directory has failed.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiRpmDatabaseReloadError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised on error of an rpm DB dump -> reload process.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiRpmDirNotRemoteError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the provided rpm-dir repository is not local

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiRuntimeConfigFormatError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the expected format in the yaml KIWI runtime config file does not match

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiRuntimeError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if a runtime check has failed.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiSatSolverJobError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if a sat solver job can not be done, e.g because the requested package or collection does not exist in the registered repository metadata

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiSatSolverJobProblems` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the sat solver operations returned with solver problems e.g package conflicts

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiSatSolverPluginError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the python solv module failed to load. The solv module is provided by SUSE's rpm package python-solv and provides a python binding to the libsolv C library

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiSchemaImportError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the schema file could not be read by lxml.RelaxNG.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiScriptFailed` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if a user script returned with an exit code != 0.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiSetupIntermediateConfigError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the setup of the temporary image system configuration for the duration of the build process has failed.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiSizeError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception is raised when the conversion from a given size in string format to a number.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiSolverRepositorySetupError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the repository type is not supported for the creation of a SAT solvable

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiSystemDeletePackagesFailed` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the deletion of a package has failed in the corresponding package manager instance.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiSystemInstallPackagesFailed` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the installation of a package has failed in the corresponding package manager instance.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiSystemUpdateFailed` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the package upgrade has failed in the corresponding package manager instance.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiTargetDirectoryNotFound` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the specified target directory to store the image results was not found.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiTemplateError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the substitution of variables in a configuration file template has failed.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiTypeNotFound` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if no build type was found in the XML description.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiUnknownServiceName` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if an unknown service name was provided on the commandline.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiUriOpenError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the urllib urlopen request has failed

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiUriStyleUnknown` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if an unsupported URI style was used in the source definition of a repository.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiUriTypeUnknown` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the protocol type of an URI is unknown in the source definition of a repository.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiValidationError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the XML validation against the schema has failed.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiVhdTagError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the GUID tag is not provided in the expected format.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiVolumeGroupConflict` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the requested LVM volume group already is in use on the build system.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiVolumeManagerSetupError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the preconditions for volume mangement support are not met or an attempt was made to create an instance of a volume manager for an unsupported volume

management system.

exception `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiVolumeRootIDError` (*message*)

Bases: `kiwi.exceptions.KiwiError`

Exception raised if the root volume can not be found. This concept currently exists only for the btrfs subvolume system.

6.2.9 kiwi.firmware Module

class `kiwi.firmware.FirmWare` (*xml_state*)

Bases: `object`

Implements firmware specific methods

According to the selected firmware some parameters in a disk image changes. This class provides methods to provide firmware dependant information

- **param object xml_state** instance of XMLState

bios_mode()

Check if BIOS mode is requested

Returns True or False

Return type bool

ec2_mode()

Check if EC2 mode is requested

Returns True or False

Return type bool

efi_mode()

Check if EFI mode is requested

Returns True or False

Return type bool

get_efi_partition_size()

Size of EFI partition. Returns 0 if no such partition is needed

Returns mbsize value

Return type int

get_legacy_bios_partition_size()

Size of legacy bios_grub partition if legacy BIOS mode is required. Returns 0 if no such partition is needed

Returns mbsize value

Return type int

get_partition_table_type()

Provides partition table type according to architecture and firmware

Returns partition table name

Return type str

get_prep_partition_size()

Size of Prep partition if OFW mode is requested. Returns 0 if no such partition is needed

Returns mbsize value

Return type int

legacy_bios_mode()

Check if the legacy boot from BIOS systems should be activated

Returns True or False

Return type bool

ofw_mode()

Check if OFW mode is requested

Returns True or False

Return type bool

opal_mode()

Check if Opal mode is requested

Returns True or False

Return type bool

6.2.10 kiwi.help Module

class kiwi.help.Help

Bases: object

Implements man page help for kiwi commands

Each kiwi command implements their own manual page, which is shown if the positional argument 'help' is passed to the command.

show (*command=None*)

Call man to show the command specific manual page

All kiwi commands store their manual page in the section '8' of the man system. The calling process is replaced by the man process

Parameters **command** (*string*) – man page name

6.2.11 kiwi.kiwi Module

kiwi.kiwi.**extras** (*help_, version, options, doc*)

Overwritten method from docopt

Shows our own usage message for `-h|--help`

Parameters

- **help** (*bool*) – indicate to show help
- **version** (*string*) – version string
- **options** (*list*) – list of option tuples
[option(name='name', value='value')]
- **doc** (*string*) – docopt doc string

`kiwi.kiwi.main()`

kiwi - main application entry point

Initializes a global log object and handles all errors of the application. Every known error is inherited from `KiwiError`, everything else is passed down until the generic `Exception` which is handled as unexpected error including the python backtrace

`kiwi.kiwi.usage(command_usage)`

Instead of the docopt way to show the usage information we provide a kiwi specific usage information. The usage data now always consists out of:

1. the generic call `kiwi [global options] service <command> [<args>]`
2. the command specific usage defined by the docopt string short form by default, long form with `-h|--help`
3. the global options

Parameters `command_usage` (*string*) – usage data

6.2.12 kiwi.logger Module

class `kiwi.logger.ColorFormatter` (**args, **kwargs*)

Bases: `logging.Formatter`

Extended standard logging Formatter

Extended format supporting text with color metadata

Example:

```
ColorFormatter(message_format, '%H:%M:%S')
```

format (*record*)

Creates a logging Formatter with support for color messages

Parameters `record` (*tuple*) – logging message record

Returns result from `format_message`

Return type str

class `kiwi.logger.ColorMessage`

Bases: `object`

Implements color messages for Python logging facility

Has to implement the `format_message` method to serve as message formatter

format_message (*level, message*)

Message formatter with support for embedded color sequences

The Message is allowed to contain the following color metadata:

- `$RESET`, reset to no color mode
- `$BOLD`, bold
- `$COLOR`, color the following text
- `$LIGHTCOLOR`, light color the following text

The color of the message depends on the level and is defined in the `ColorMessage` constructor

Parameters

- **level** (*int*) – color level number
- **message** (*string*) – text

Returns color message with escape sequences

Return type `str`

class `kiwi.logger.DebugFilter` (*name=""*)

Bases: `logging.Filter`

Extended standard debug logging Filter

filter (*record*)

Only messages with record level `DEBUG` can pass for messages with another level an extra handler is used

Parameters **record** (*tuple*) – logging message record

Returns `record.name`

Return type `str`

class `kiwi.logger.ErrorFilter` (*name=""*)

Bases: `logging.Filter`

Extended standard error logging Filter

filter (*record*)

Only messages with record level `DEBUG` can pass for messages with another level an extra handler is used

Parameters **record** (*tuple*) – logging message record

Returns `record.name`

Return type str

class kiwi.logger.**InfoFilter** (*name*=")

Bases: logging.Filter

Extended standard logging Filter

filter (*record*)

Only messages with record level INFO and WARNING can pass for messages with another level an extra handler is used

Parameters **record** (*tuple*) – logging message record

Returns record.name

Return type str

class kiwi.logger.**Logger** (*name*)

Bases: logging.Logger

Extended logging facility based on Python logging

Parameters **name** (*string*) – name of the logger

getLogLevel ()

Return currently used log level

Returns log level number

Return type int

progress (*current*, *total*, *prefix*, *bar_length*=40)

Custom progress log information. progress information is intentionally only logged to stdout and will bypass any handlers. We don't want this information to show up in the log file

Parameters

- **current** (*int*) – current item
- **total** (*int*) – total number of items
- **prefix** (*string*) – prefix name
- **bar_length** (*int*) – length of progress bar

setLogLevel (*level*)

Set custom log level for all console handlers

Parameters **level** (*int*) – log level number

set_color_format ()

Set color format for all console handlers

set_logfile (*filename*)

Set logfile handler

Parameters **filename** (*string*) – logfile file path

```
class kiwi.logger.LoggerSchedulerFilter (name="")
```

Bases: logging.Filter

Extended standard logging Filter

```
filter (record)
```

Messages from apscheduler scheduler instances are filtered out They conflict with console progress information

Parameters **record** (*tuple*) – logging message record

Returns record.name

Return type str

```
class kiwi.logger.WarningFilter (name="")
```

Bases: logging.Filter

Extended standard warning logging Filter

```
filter (record)
```

Only messages with record level WARNING can pass for messages with another level an extra handler is used

Parameters **record** (*tuple*) – logging message record

Returns record.name

Return type str

6.2.13 kiwi.mount_manager Module

```
class kiwi.mount_manager.MountManager (device, mountpoint=None)
```

Bases: object

Implements methods for mounting, umounting and mount checking

If a MountManager instance is used to mount a device the caller must care for the time when umount needs to be called. The class does not automatically release the mounted device, which is intentional

- **param string device** device node name
- **param string mountpoint** mountpoint directory name

```
bind_mount ()
```

Bind mount the device to the mountpoint

```
is_mounted ()
```

Check if mounted

Returns True or False

Return type bool

```
mount (options=None)
```

Standard mount the device to the mountpoint

Parameters `options` (*list*) – mount options

umount ()

Umount by the mountpoint directory

If the resource is busy the call will return False

Returns True or False

Return type bool

umount_lazy ()

Umount by the mountpoint directory in lazy mode

Release the mount in any case, however the time when the mounted resource is released by the kernel depends on when the resource enters the non busy state

6.2.14 kiwi.path Module

class `kiwi.path.Path`

Bases: `object`

Directory path helpers

classmethod `create` (*path*)

Create path and all sub directories to target

Parameters `path` (*string*) – path name

classmethod `remove` (*path*)

Delete empty path, causes an error if target is not empty

Parameters `path` (*string*) – path name

classmethod `remove_hierarchy` (*path*)

Recursively remove an empty path and its sub directories ignore non empty or protected paths and leave them untouched

Parameters `path` (*string*) – path name

classmethod `sort_by_hierarchy` (*path_list*)

Sort given list of path names by their hierarchy in the tree

Example:

```
result = Path.sort_by_hierarchy(['/var/lib', '/var'])
```

Parameters `path_list` (*list*) – list of path names

Returns hierarchy sorted `path_list`

Return type list

classmethod `which` (*filename*, *alternative_lookup_paths=None*, *custom_env=None*, *access_mode=None*)

Lookup file name in PATH

Parameters

- **filename** (*string*) – file base name
- **alternative_lookup_paths** (*list*) – list of additional lookup paths
- **custom_env** (*list*) – a custom os.environ
- **access_mode** (*int*) – one of the os access modes or a combination of them (os.R_OK, os.W_OK and os.X_OK). If the provided access mode does not match the file is considered not existing

Returns absolute path to file or None

Return type str

classmethod **wipe** (*path*)
Delete path and all contents

Parameters **path** (*string*) – path name

6.2.15 kiwi.privileges Module

class kiwi.privileges.Privileges
Bases: object

Implements check for root privileges

classmethod **check_for_root_permissions** ()
Check if we are effectively root on the system. If not an exception is thrown

Returns True or raise an Exception

Return type bool

6.2.16 kiwi.runtime_checker Module

class kiwi.runtime_checker.RuntimeChecker (*xml_state*)
Bases: object

Implements build consistency checks at runtime

The schema of an image description covers structure and syntax of the provided data. The RuntimeChecker provides methods to perform further semantic checks which allows to recognize potential build or boot problems early.

- **param object xml_state** Instance of XMLState

check_boot_description_exists ()
If a kiwi initrd is used, a lookup to the specified boot description is done and fails early if it does not exist

check_consistent_kernel_in_boot_and_system_image()

If a kiwi initrd is used, the kernel used to build the kiwi initrd and the kernel used in the system image must be the same in order to avoid an inconsistent boot setup

check_docker_tool_chain_installed()

When creating docker images the tools umoci and skopeo are used in order to create docker compatible images. This check searches for those tools to be installed in the build system and fails if it can't find them

check_dracut_module_for_disk_oem_in_package_list()

OEM images if configured to use dracut as initrd system requires the KIWI provided dracut-kiwi-oem-repart module to be installed at the time dracut is called. Thus this runtime check examines if the required package is part of the package list in the image description.

check_dracut_module_for_disk_overlay_in_package_list()

Disk images configured to use a root filesystem overlay requires the KIWI provided kiwi-overlay dracut module to be installed at the time dracut is called. Thus this runtime check examines if the required package is part of the package list in the image description.

check_dracut_module_for_live_iso_in_package_list()

Live ISO images uses a dracut initrd to boot and requires the KIWI provided kiwi-live dracut module to be installed at the time dracut is called. Thus this runtime check examines if the required package is part of the package list in the image description.

check_dracut_module_for_oem_install_in_package_list()

OEM images if configured to use dracut as initrd system and configured with one of the installiso, installstick or installpxe attributes requires the KIWI provided dracut-kiwi-oem-dump module to be installed at the time dracut is called. Thus this runtime check examines if the required package is part of the package list in the image description.

check_efi_mode_for_disk_overlay_correctly_setup()

Disk images configured to use a root filesystem overlay only supports the standard EFI mode and not secure boot. That's because the shim setup performs changes to the root filesystem which can not be applied during the bootloader setup at build time because at that point the root filesystem is a read-only squashfs source.

check_grub_efi_installed_for_efi_firmware()

If the image is being built with efi or uefi firmware setting we need a grub(2)-...-efi package installed. The check is not 100% as every distribution has different names and different requirement but it is a reasonable approximation on the safe side meaning the user may still get an error but should not receive a false positive

check_image_include_repos_publicly_resolvable()

Verify that all repos marked with the imageinclude attribute can be resolved into a http based web URL

check_mediacheck_only_for_x86_arch()

If the current architecture is not from the x86 family the 'mediacheck' feature avail-

able for iso images is not supported. Checkmedia tool and its related boot code are only available for x86 platforms.

check_repositories_configured()

Verify that that there are repositories configured

check_target_directory_not_in_shared_cache(*target_dir*)

The target directory must be outside of the kiwi shared cache directory in order to avoid busy mounts because kiwi bind mounts the cache directory into the image root tree to access host caching information

Parameters **target_dir** (*string*) – path name

check_volume_label_used_with_lvm()

The optional volume label in a systemdisk setup is only effective if the LVM, logical volume manager system is used. In any other case where the filesystem itself offers volume management capabilities there are no extra filesystem labels which can be applied per volume

check_volume_setup_has_no_root_definition()

The root volume in a systemdisk setup is handled in a special way. It is not allowed to setup a custom name or mountpoint for the root volume. Therefore the size of the root volume can be setup via the @root volume name. This check looks up the volume setup and searches if there is a configuration for the '/' mountpoint which would cause the image build to fail

check_xen_uniquely_setup_as_server_or_guest()

If the image is classified to be used as Xen image, it can be either a Xen Server(dom0) or a Xen guest. The image configuration is checked if the information uniquely identifies the image as such

6.2.17 kiwi.runtime_config Module

class `kiwi.runtime_config.RuntimeConfig`

Bases: `object`

Implements reading of runtime configuration file:

1. `~/.config/kiwi/config.yml`
2. `/etc/kiwi.yml`

The KIWI runtime configuration file is a yaml formatted file containing information to control the behavior of the tools used by KIWI.

get_container_compression()

Return compression algorithm to use for compression of container images

container:

- `compress: xzlnone`

if no or invalid configuration data is provided, the default compression algorithm from the Defaults class is returned

Returns A name

Return type str

get_iso_tool_category()

Return tool category which should be used to build iso images

iso:

- tool_category: cdrtools|xorriso

if no or invalid configuration exists the default tool category from the Defaults class is returned

Returns A name

Return type str

get_max_size_constraint()

Returns the maximum allowed size of the built image. The value is returned in bytes and it is specified in build_constraints element with the max_size attribute. The value can be specified in bytes or it can be specified with m=MB or g=GB.

build_constraints:

- max_size: 700m

if no configuration exists None is returned

Returns byte value or None

Return type int

get_obs_download_server_url()

Return URL of buildservice download server in:

obs:

- download_url: ...

if no configuration exists the downloadserver from the Defaults class is returned

Returns URL type data

Return type str

get_xz_options()

Return list of XZ compression options in:

xz:

- options: ...

if no configuration exists None is returned

Returns

Contains list of options

['-option=value']

Return type list

is_obs_public()

Check if the buildservice configuration is public or private in:

obs:

- public: true/false

if no configuration exists we assume to be public

Returns True or False

Return type bool

6.2.18 kiwi.version Module

Global version information used in kiwi and the package

6.2.19 kiwi.xml_description Module

```
class kiwi.xml_description.XMLDescription(description=None,  
                                           derived_from=None,  
                                           xml_content=None)
```

Bases: object

Implements data management for the XML description

- XSLT Style Sheet processing to apply on this version of kiwi
- Schema Validation based on RelaxNG schema
- Loading XML data into internal data structures

Attributes

Parameters

- **description** (*string*) – path to XML description file
- **derived_from** (*string*) – path to base XML description file
- **xml_content** (*string*) – XML description data as content string

get_extension_xml_data (*namespace_name*)

Return the xml etree parse result for the specified extension namespace

Parameters **namespace_name** (*string*) – name of the extension namespace

Returns result of etree.parse

Return type object

load()

Read XML description, pass it along to the XSLT processor, validate it against the schema and finally pass it to the autogenerated(generateDS) parser.

Returns instance of XML toplevel domain (image)

Return type object

6.2.20 kiwi.xml_state Module

```
class kiwi.xml_state.XMLState(xml_data, profiles=None,  
                             build_type=None)
```

Bases: object

Implements methods to get stateful information from the XML data

Parameters

- **xml_data** (*object*) – instance of XMLDescription
- **profiles** (*list*) – list of used profiles
- **build_type** (*object*) – build <type> section reference

```
add_container_config_label (label_name, value)
```

Adds a new label in the containerconfig section, if a label with the same name is already defined in containerconfig it gets overwritten by this method.

Parameters

- **label_name** (*str*) – the string representing the label name
- **value** (*str*) – the value of the label

```
add_repository (repo_source, repo_type, repo_alias,  
                repo_prio, repo_imageinclude=False,  
                repo_package_gpgcheck=None)
```

Add a new repository section at the end of the list

Parameters

- **repo_source** (*string*) – repository URI
- **repo_type** (*string*) – type name defined by schema
- **repo_alias** (*string*) – alias name
- **repo_prio** (*string*) – priority number, package manager specific
- **repo_imageinclude** (*boolean*) – setup repository inside of the image
- **repo_package_gpgcheck** (*boolean*) – enable/disable package gpg checks

```
copy_bootdelete_packages (target_state)
```

Copy packages marked as bootdelete to the packages type=delete section in the target xml state

Parameters **target_state** (*object*) – XMLState instance

copy_bootincluded_archives (*target_state*)

Copy archives marked as bootinclude to the packages type=bootstrap section in the target xml state

Parameters **target_state** (*object*) – XMLState instance

copy_bootincluded_packages (*target_state*)

Copy packages marked as bootinclude to the packages type=image (or type=bootstrap if no type=image was found) section in the target xml state. The package will also be removed from the packages type=delete section in the target xml state if present there

Parameters **target_state** (*object*) – XMLState instance

copy_build_type_attributes (*attribute_names*, *target_state*)

Copy specified attributes from this build type section to the target xml state build type section

Parameters

- **attribute_names** (*list*) – type section attributes
- **target_state** (*object*) – XMLState instance

copy_displayname (*target_state*)

Copy image displayname from this xml state to the target xml state

Parameters **target_state** (*object*) – XMLState instance

copy_drivers_sections (*target_state*)

Copy drivers sections from this xml state to the target xml state

Parameters **target_state** (*object*) – XMLState instance

copy_machine_section (*target_state*)

Copy machine sections from this xml state to the target xml state

Parameters **target_state** (*object*) – XMLState instance

copy_name (*target_state*)

Copy image name from this xml state to the target xml state

Parameters **target_state** (*object*) – XMLState instance

copy_oemconfig_section (*target_state*)

Copy oemconfig sections from this xml state to the target xml state

Parameters **target_state** (*object*) – XMLState instance

copy_preferences_subsections (*section_names*, *target_state*)

Copy subsections of the preferences sections, matching given section names, from this xml state to the target xml state

Parameters

- **section_names** (*list*) – preferences subsection names
- **target_state** (*object*) – XMLState instance

copy_repository_sections (*target_state*, *wipe=False*)

Copy repository sections from this xml state to the target xml state

Parameters

- **target_state** (*object*) – XMLState instance
- **wipe** (*bool*) – delete all repos in target prior to copy

copy_strip_sections (*target_state*)

Copy strip sections from this xml state to the target xml state

Parameters **target_state** (*object*) – XMLState instance

copy_systemdisk_section (*target_state*)

Copy systemdisk sections from this xml state to the target xml state

Parameters **target_state** (*object*) – XMLState instance

delete_repository_sections ()

Delete all repository sections matching configured profiles

delete_repository_sections_used_for_build ()

Delete all repository sections used to build the image matching configured profiles

get_bootstrap_archives ()

List of archive names from the type="bootstrap" packages section(s)

Returns archive names

Return type list

get_bootstrap_collection_type ()

Collection type for packages sections matching type="bootstrap"

Returns collection type name

Return type str

get_bootstrap_collections ()

List of collection names from the packages sections matching type="bootstrap"

Returns collection names

Return type list

get_bootstrap_packages ()

List of package names from the type="bootstrap" packages section(s)

The list gets the selected package manager appended if there is a request to install packages inside of the image via a chroot operation

Returns package names

Return type list

get_bootstrap_packages_sections ()

List of packages sections matching type="bootstrap"

Returns list of <packages> section reference(s)

Return type list

get_bootstrap_products()

List of product names from the packages sections matching type="bootstrap"

Returns product names

Return type list

get_build_type_containerconfig_section()

First containerconfig section from the build type section

Returns <containerconfig> section reference

Return type xml_parse::containerconfig

get_build_type_format_options()

Disk format options returned as a dictionary

Returns format options

Return type dict

get_build_type_machine_section()

First machine section from the build type section

Returns <machine> section reference

Return type xml_parse::machine

get_build_type_name()

Default build type name

Returns Content of image attribute from build type

Return type str

get_build_type_oemconfig_section()

First oemconfig section from the build type section

Returns <oemconfig> section reference

Return type xml_parse::oemconfig

get_build_type_pxedeploy_section()

First pxedeploy section from the build type section

Returns <pxedeploy> section reference

Return type xml_parse::pxedeploy

get_build_type_size(include_unpartitioned=False)

Size information from the build type section. If no unit is set the value is treated as mbytes

Parameters **include_unpartitioned** (*bool*) – sets if the unpartitioned area should be included in the computed size or not

Returns mbytes

Return type int

get_build_type_spare_part_size()

Size information for the spare_part size from the build type. If no unit is set the value is treated as mbytes

Returns mbytes

Return type int

get_build_type_system_disk_section()

First system disk section from the build type section

Returns <systemdisk> section reference

Return type xml_parse::systemdisk

get_build_type_unpartitioned_bytes()

Size of the unpartitioned area for image in megabytes

Returns mbytes

Return type int

get_build_type_vagrant_config_section()

First vagrantconfig section from the build type section

Returns <vagrantconfig> section reference

Return type xml_parse::vagrantconfig

get_build_type_vmconfig_entries()

List of vmconfig-entry section values from the first machine section in the build type section

Returns <vmconfig_entry> section reference(s)

Return type list

get_build_type_vmdisk_section()

First vmdisk section from the first machine section in the build type section

Returns <vmdisk> section reference

Return type xml_parse::vmdisk

get_build_type_vmdvd_section()

First vmdvd section from the first machine section in the build type section

Returns <vmdvd> section reference

Return type xml_parse::vmdvd

get_build_type_vmnic_entries()

vmnic section(s) from the first machine section in the build type section

Returns list of <vmnic> section reference(s)

Return type list

get_collection_type (*section_type*='image')

Collection type from packages sections matching given section type.

If no collection type is specified the default collection type is set to: onlyRequired

Parameters **section_type** (*string*) – type name from packages
section

Returns collection type name

Return type str

get_collections (*section_type*='image')

List of collection names from the packages sections matching type=section_type
and type=build_type

Returns collection names

Return type list

get_container_config ()

Dictionary of containerconfig information

Takes attributes and subsection data from the selected <containerconfig> section
and stores it in a dictionary

get_derived_from_image_uri ()

Uri object of derived image if configured

Specific image types can be based on a master image. This method returns the
location of this image when configured in the XML description

Returns Instance of Uri

Return type object

get_disk_start_sector ()

First disk sector number to be used by the first disk partition.

Returns number

Return type int

get_distribution_name_from_boot_attribute ()

Extract the distribution name from the boot attribute of the build type section.

If no boot attribute is configured or the contents does not match the kiwi defined
naming schema for boot image descriptions, an exception is thrown

Returns lowercase distribution name

Return type str

get_drivers_list ()

List of driver names from all drivers sections matching configured profiles

Returns driver names

Return type list

get_fs_mount_option_list()

List of root filesystem mount options

The list contains one element with the information from the fsmountoptions attribute. The value there is passed along to the -o mount option

Returns max one element list with mount option string

Return type list

get_image_packages_sections()

List of packages sections matching type="image"

Returns list of <packages> section reference(s)

Return type list

get_image_version()

Image version from preferences section.

Multiple occurrences of version in preferences sections are not forbidden, however only the first version found defines the final image version

Returns Content of <version> section

Return type str

get_initrd_system()

Name of initrd system to use

Depending on the image type a specific initrd system is either pre selected or free of choice according to the XML type setup

Returns dracut, kiwi or None

Return type str

get_oemconfig_oem_multipath_scan()

State value to activate multipath maps. Returns a boolean value if specified or None

Returns Content of <oem-multipath-scan> section value

Return type bool

get_package_manager()

Get configured package manager from selected preferences section

Returns Content of the <packagemanager> section

Return type str

get_package_sections(*packages_sections*)

List of package sections from the given packages sections. Each list element contains a tuple with the <package> section reference and the <packages> section this package belongs to

If a package entry specifies an architecture, it is only taken if the host architecture matches the configured architecture

Parameters `packages_sections` (*list*) – <packages>

Returns

Contains list of package_type tuples

```
[package_type(packages_section=object, package_  
↪section=object) ]
```

Return type list

get_packages_sections (*section_types*)

List of packages sections matching given section type(s)

Parameters `section_types` (*list*) – type name(s) from packages sections

Returns list of <packages> section reference(s)

Return type list

get_preferences_sections ()

All preferences sections for the selected profiles

Returns list of <preferences> section reference(s)

Return type list

get_products (*section_type='image'*)

List of product names from the packages sections matching type=section_type and type=build_type

Parameters `section_type` (*string*) – type name from packages section

Returns product names

Return type list

get_repository_sections ()

List of all repository sections matching configured profiles

Returns <repository> section reference(s)

Return type list

get_repository_sections_used_for_build ()

List of all repositorys sections used to build the image and matching configured profiles.

Returns <repository> section reference(s)

Return type list

get_repository_sections_used_in_image ()

List of all repositorys sections to be configured in the resulting image matching configured profiles.

Returns <repository> section reference(s)

Return type list

get_rpm_check_signatures()

Gets the rpm-check-signatures configuration flag. Returns False if not present.

Returns True or False

Return type bool

get_rpm_excludedocs()

Gets the rpm-excludedocs configuration flag. Returns False if not present.

Returns True or False

Return type bool

get_strip_files_to_delete()

Items to delete from strip section

Returns item names

Return type list

get_strip_libraries_to_keep()

Libraries to keep from strip section

Returns librarie names

Return type list

get_strip_list(*section_type*)

List of strip names matching the given section type and profiles

Parameters **section_type** (*string*) – type name from packages section

Returns strip names

Return type list

get_strip_tools_to_keep()

Tools to keep from strip section

Returns tool names

Return type list

get_system_archives()

List of archive names from the packages sections matching type="image" and type=build_type

Returns archive names

Return type list

get_system_collection_type()

Collection type for packages sections matching type="image"

Returns collection type name

Return type str

get_system_collections()

List of collection names from the packages sections matching type="image"

Returns collection names

Return type list

get_system_ignore_packages()

List of ignore package names from the packages sections matching type="image" and type=build_type

Returns package names

Return type list

get_system_packages()

List of package names from the packages sections matching type="image" and type=build_type

Returns package names

Return type list

get_system_products()

List of product names from the packages sections matching type="image"

Returns product names

Return type list

get_to_become_deleted_packages(*force=True*)

List of package names from the type="delete" or type="uninstall" packages section(s)

Parameters **force** (*bool*) – return "delete" type if True, "uninstall" type otherwise

Returns package names

Return type list

get_user_groups(*user_name*)

List of group names matching specified user

Each entry in the list is the name of a group that the specified user belongs to. The first item in the list is the login or primary group. The list will be empty if no groups are specified in the description file.

Returns groups data for the given user

Return type list

get_users()

List of configured users.

Each entry in the list is a single `xml_parse::user` instance.

Returns list of <user> section reference(s)

Return type list

get_users_sections()

All users sections for the selected profiles

Returns list of <users> section reference(s)

Return type list

get_volume_group_name()

Volume group name from selected <systemdisk> section

Returns volume group name

Return type str

get_volume_management()

Provides information which volume management system is used

Returns name of volume manager

Return type str

get_volumes()

List of configured systemdisk volumes.

Each entry in the list is a tuple with the following information

- name: name of the volume
- size: size of the volume
- realpath: system path to lookup volume data. If no mountpoint is set the volume name is used as data path.
- mountpoint: volume mount point and volume data path
- fullsize: takes all space True/False
- attributes: list of volume attributes handled via chatter

Returns

Contains list of volume_type tuples

```
[
    volume_type (
        name=volume_name,
        size=volume_size,
        realpath=path,
        mountpoint=path,
        fullsize=True,
        label=volume_label,
        attributes=['no-copy-on-write']
    )
]
```


Return type list

is_xen_guest()

Check if build type setup specifies a Xen Guest (domX) The check is based on the firmware and xen_loader configuration values:

- Firmware pointing to ec2 means the image is targeted to run in Amazon EC2 which is a Xen guest
- Machine setup with a xen_loader attribute also indicates a Xen guest target

Returns True or False

Return type bool

is_xen_server()

Check if build type domain setup specifies a Xen Server (dom0)

Returns True or False

Return type bool

package_matches_host_architecture (*package*)

Tests if the given package section is applicable for the current host architecture. If no architecture is specified within the section it is considered as a match returning True.

Note: The XML section pointer must provide an arch attribute

Parameters **section** – XML section object

Returns True or False

Return type bool

profile_matches_host_architecture (*profile*)

Tests if the given profile section is applicable for the current host architecture. If no architecture is specified within the section it is considered as a match returning True.

Note: The XML section pointer must provide an arch attribute

Parameters **section** – XML section object

Returns True or False

Return type bool

set_container_config_tag (*tag*)

Set new tag name in containerconfig section

In order to set a new tag value an existing containerconfig and tag setup is required

Parameters **tag** (*string*) – tag name

set_derived_from_image_uri (*uri*)

Set derived_from attribute to a new value

In order to set a new value the `derived_from` attribute must be already present in the image configuration

Parameters `uri` (*string*) – URI

set_repository (*repo_source*, *repo_type*, *repo_alias*,
repo_prio, *repo_imageinclude*=*False*,
repo_package_gpgcheck=*None*)

Overwrite repository data of the first repository

Parameters

- **repo_source** (*string*) – repository URI
- **repo_type** (*string*) – type name defined by schema
- **repo_alias** (*string*) – alias name
- **repo_prio** (*string*) – priority number, package manager specific
- **repo_imageinclude** (*boolean*) – setup repository inside of the image
- **repo_package_gpgcheck** (*boolean*) – enable/disable package gpg checks

6.2.21 Module Contents

6.3 Schema Documentation 6.9

6.4 Extending KIWI with Custom Operations

Hint: Abstract

Users building images with KIWI need to implement their own infrastructure if the image description does not provide a way to embed custom information which is outside of the scope of the general schema as it is provided by KIWI today.

This document describes how to create an extension plugin for the KIWI schema to add and validate additional information in the KIWI image description.

Such a schema extension can be used in an additional KIWI task plugin to provide a new subcommand for KIWI. As of today there is no other plugin interface except for providing additional KIWI commands implemented.

Depending on the demand for custom plugins, the interface to hook in code into other parts of the KIWI processing needs to be extended.

This description applies for version 9.16.27.

6.4.1 The <extension> Section

The main KIWI schema supports an extension section which allows to specify any XML structure and attributes as long as they are connected to a namespace. According to this any custom XML structure can be implemented like the following example shows:

```
<image>
...
  <extension xmlns:my_plugin="http://www.my_plugin.com">
    <my_plugin:my_feature>
      <my_plugin:title name="cool stuff"/>
    </my_plugin:my_feature>
  </extension>
</image>
```

- Any toplevel namespace must exist only once
- Multiple different toplevel namespaces are allowed, e.g my_plugin_a, my_plugin_b

6.4.2 RELAX NG Schema for the Extension

If an extension section is found, KIWI looks up its namespace and asks the main XML catalog for the schema file to validate the extension data. The schema file must be a RELAX NG schema in the .rng format. We recommend to place the schema as /usr/share/xml/kiwi/my_plugin.rng

For the above example the RELAX NG Schema in the compressed format my_plugin.rnc would look like this:

```
namespace my_plugin = "http://www.my_plugin.com"

start =
  k.my_feature

div {
  k.my_feature.attlist = empty
  k.my_feature =
    element my_plugin:my_feature {
      k.my_feature.attlist &
      k.title
    }
}

div {
  k.title.name.attribute =
    attribute name { text }
  k.title.attlist = k.title.name.attribute
  k.title =
    element my_plugin:title {
      k.title.attlist
    }
}
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
}  
}
```

In order to convert this schema to the .rng format just call:

```
$ trang -I rnc -O rng my_plugin.rnc /usr/share/xml/kiwi/my_plugin.  
→rng
```

6.4.3 Extension Schema in XML catalog

As mentioned above the mapping from the extension namespace to the correct RELAX NG schema file is handled by a XML catalog file. The XML catalog for the example use here looks like this:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>  
<catalog xmlns="urn:oasis:names:tc:entity:xmlns:xml:catalog">  
  <system  
    systemId="http://www.my_plugin.com"  
    uri="file:///usr/share/xml/kiwi/my_plugin.rng"/>  
</catalog>
```

For resolving the catalog KIWI uses the **xmlcatalog** command and the main XML catalog from the system which is `/etc/xml/catalog`.

Note: It depends on the distribution and its version how the main catalog gets informed about the existence of the KIWI extension catalog file. Please consult the distribution manual about adding XML catalogs.

If the following command provides the information to the correct RELAX NG schema file you are ready for a first test:

```
$ xmlcatalog /etc/xml/catalog http://www.my_plugin.com
```

6.4.4 Using the Extension

In order to test your extension place the example extension section from the beginning of this document into one of your image description's `config.xml` file

The following example will read the name attribute from the title section of the `my_feature` root element and prints it:

```
import logging  
  
from kiwi.xml_description import XMLDescription
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
description = XMLDescription('path/to/kiwi/XML/config.xml')
description.load()

my_plugin = description.get_extension_xml_data('my_plugin')

print(my_plugin.getroot()[0].get('name'))
```

The core appliance builder is developed in Python and follows the test driven development rules.

6.5 Fork the upstream KIWI repository

1. On GitHub, navigate to: <https://github.com/SUSE/kiwi>
2. In the top-right corner of the page, click **Fork**.

6.6 Create a local clone of the forked KIWI repository

```
$ git clone https://github.com/YOUR-USERNAME/kiwi
$ git remote add upstream https://github.com/SUSE/kiwi.git
```

6.7 Create a python virtual development environment

The Python project uses **pyvenv** to setup a development environment for the desired Python version. The script **pyvenv** is already installed when using Python 3.3 and higher (see <https://docs.python.org/3.3/whatsnew/3.3.html#pep-405-virtual-environments> for details). For Python 2.7 use **virtualenv**, which is provided via pip or as an extra package in your favourite Linux distribution.

However, for setting up a Python virtual development environment the following additional LaTeX, include, header files and compilers are required in order to allow for compiling the C parts of the runtime required Python modules:

- XML processing with libxml2 and libxslt (for `lxml`)
- Foreign function interface library (libffi48)
- Python header files (for `xattr`)
- GCC compiler and glibc-devel header files
- LaTeX packages for building PDF documentation

Note: On SUSE systems the required components can be installed with the following command. Package names and install command are different on other systems.

```
$ zypper install \  
    python3-devel libxml2-devel libxslt-devel libffi48-devel \  
    glibc-devel gcc texlive-fncychap texlive-wrapfig \  
    texlive-capt-of trang
```

Once the basic python module requirements are installed on your system, the next step is to create the virtual development environment. The following procedure describes how to create a Python3 virtual development environment:

1. Create the virtual environment:

```
$ python3 -m venv .env3
```

2. Activate the virtual environment:

```
$ source .env3/bin/activate
```

3. Install KIWI requirements inside the virtual environment:

```
$ pip install -r .virtualenv.dev-requirements.txt
```

4. Install KIWI in Development Mode:

```
$ ./setup.py develop
```

Once the development environment is activated and initialized with the project required Python modules, you are ready to work.

The **develop** target of the **setup.py** script automatically creates the application entry point called **kiwi-ng-3**, which allows to simply call the application from the code in the virtual environment:

```
$ kiwi-ng-3 --help
```

In order to leave the development mode just call:

```
$ deactivate
```

To resume your work, change into your local Git repository and recall:

```
$ source .env3/bin/activate
```

If the version has changed by **bumpversion**, this causes the current entry point to become invalid. Reconstruct the entry point after a version change by recalling:

```
$ ./setup.py develop
```

6.8 Running Test Cases

For running test cases, the preferred method is to use Tox. The Tox execution environment can be used to run any kind of target, tests are just one, documentation is another one. Refer to `tox.ini` for more details. Tox itself creates a python virtual environment for each tox target below `./.tox`.

Before you start to contribute code make sure all tests pass by calling the following command:

```
$ tox
```

The previous call would run **tox** for different Python versions, checks the source code for errors, and builds the documentation.

If you want to see the target, use the option `-l` to print a list:

```
$ tox -l
```

To only run a special target, use the `-e` option. The following example runs the test cases for the 3.6 interpreter only:

```
$ tox -e 3.6
```

6.9 Create a branch for each feature or bugfix

Congratulation ! you successfully created a KIWI development environment and all tests passed. Now it's time to hack on KIWI. Code changes should be done in an extra git branch. This allows for creating GitHub pull requests in a clean way. Also See [Github Issues and Pull Requests](#)

```
$ git checkout -b my-topic-branch
```

Make and commit your changes.

Note: You can make multiple commits which is generally useful to give your changes a clear structure and to allow us to better review your work effort.

Note: Your work is important and should be signed to ensure the integrity of the repository and the code. Thus we recommend to setup a signing key as documented in [Signing_Git_Patches](#).

```
$ git commit -S -a
```

Run tests and code style checks. All of these are also performed by the travis integration test system at the time when a pull request will be created.

```
$ tox
```

Once all is done push your local branch to the forked repository and head out to GitHub for creating a pull request into the upstream repository.

```
$ git push origin my-topic-branch
```

Thanks much for contributing to KIWI. Your time and work effort is very much appreciated.

6.10 Good to know

The following sections provides further information about repository integrity, version, package and documentation management and are a good read to complete the picture of how the KIWI project works.

6.10.1 Signing Git Patches

With ssh keys being widely available and the increasing compute power available to many people refactoring of SSH keys is in the range of possibilities. Therefore SSH keys as used by GitHub as a “login/authentication” mechanism no longer provide the security they once did. In an effort to ensure the integrity of the repository and the code base patches sent for inclusion must be GPG signed.

To prepare Git to sign commits, follow these one-time instructions:

1. Create a key suitable for signing (its not recommended to use existing keys to not mix it up with your email environment etc):

```
$ gpg --gen-key
```

2. Choose a DSA key (3) with a key size of 2048 bits (default) and a validation of 3 years (3y). Enter your name/email and GPG will generate a DSA key for you.

You can also choose to use an empty passphrase, despite GPG’s warning, because you are only going to sign your public git commits with it and don’t need it for protecting any of your secrets. That might ease later use if you are not using an **gpg-agent** that caches your passphrase between multiple signed Git commits.

3. Add the key ID to your git config

In above case, the ID is 11223344 so you add it to either your global `~/.gitconfig` or even better to your `.git/config` inside your repo:

```
[user]
name = Joe Developer
email = developer@foo.bar
signingkey = 11223344
```


6.10.2 Raising Versions

The KIWI project follows the [Semantic Versioning](#) method. To make it easier to follow this method, **bumpversion** is used as a tool.

Follow these instructions to raise the major, minor, or patch part of a version:

- For backwards-compatible bug fixes:

```
$ bumpversion patch
```

- For additional functionality in a backwards-compatible manner. When changed, the patch level is set back to zero:

```
$ bumpversion minor
```

- For incompatible API changes. When changed, the patch and minor levels are set back to zero:

```
$ bumpversion major
```

6.10.3 Creating a Package

The creation of RPM package sources has to be done by calling the following make target:

```
$ make build
```

The sources are collected below the `dist/` directory. In there you will find all required files to submit a package to the Open Build Service or just build it with **rpmbuild**.

6.10.4 Building Documentation

The documentation is implemented using Sphinx with the ReST markup. In order to build the documentation just call:

```
tox -e doc
```

Whenever a change in the documentation is pushed to GitHub, it will be automatically updated via **travis-sphinx** and is available at:

<https://opensource.suse.com/kiwi>

CHAPTER 7

Appliance ?

An appliance is a ready to use image of an operating system including a preconfigured application for a specific use case. The appliance is provided as an image file and needs to be deployed to, or activated in the target system or service.

In KIWI the appliance is specified by a collection of human readable files in a directory, also called as the `image description`. At least one XML file `config.xml` or `.kiwi` is required. In addition there may be as well other files like scripts or configuration data.

CHAPTER 8

Contact

- [Mailing list](#)

The `kiwi-images` group is an open group and anyone can [subscribe](#), even if you do not have a Google account.

- [Matrix](#)

An open network for secure, decentralized communication. Please find the [kiwi](#) room via [Riot](#) on the web or by using the [WeeChat](#) client.

k

kiwi, 224
kiwi.app, 175
kiwi.archive, 78
kiwi.archive.cpio, 76
kiwi.archive.tar, 77
kiwi.boot, 82
kiwi.boot.image, 82
kiwi.boot.image.base, 78
kiwi.boot.image.builtin_kiwi, 81
kiwi.boot.image.dracut, 80
kiwi.bootloader, 96
kiwi.bootloader.config, 90
kiwi.bootloader.config.base, 82
kiwi.bootloader.config.grub2, 86
kiwi.bootloader.config.isolinux, 88
kiwi.bootloader.config.zipl, 89
kiwi.bootloader.install, 93
kiwi.bootloader.install.base, 91
kiwi.bootloader.install.grub2, 91
kiwi.bootloader.install.zipl, 92
kiwi.bootloader.template, 96
kiwi.bootloader.template.grub2, 93
kiwi.bootloader.template.isolinux, 95
kiwi.bootloader.template.zipl, 96
kiwi.builder, 102
kiwi.builder.archive, 96
kiwi.builder.container, 97
kiwi.builder.disk, 98
kiwi.builder.filesystem, 99
kiwi.builder.install, 100
kiwi.builder.live, 101
kiwi.builder.pxe, 101
kiwi.cli, 175
kiwi.command, 176
kiwi.command_process, 177
kiwi.container, 105
kiwi.container.docker, 104
kiwi.container.oci, 104
kiwi.container.setup, 104
kiwi.container.setup.base, 102
kiwi.container.setup.docker, 104
kiwi.defaults, 179
kiwi.exceptions, 189
kiwi.filesystem, 111
kiwi.filesystem.base, 106
kiwi.filesystem.btrfs, 107
kiwi.filesystem.clicfs, 107
kiwi.filesystem.ext2, 108
kiwi.filesystem.ext3, 108
kiwi.filesystem.ext4, 108
kiwi.filesystem.fat16, 109
kiwi.filesystem.fat32, 109
kiwi.filesystem.isofs, 109
kiwi.filesystem.setup, 110
kiwi.filesystem.squashfs, 110
kiwi.filesystem.xfs, 111
kiwi.firmware, 200
kiwi.help, 201
kiwi.iso_tools, 115
kiwi.iso_tools.base, 111
kiwi.iso_tools.cdrtools, 112
kiwi.iso_tools.iso, 113
kiwi.kiwi, 201
kiwi.logger, 202
kiwi.mount_manager, 205

- [kiwi.package_manager, 122](#)
- [kiwi.package_manager.base, 115](#)
- [kiwi.package_manager.yum, 117](#)
- [kiwi.package_manager.zypper, 119](#)
- [kiwi.partitioner, 125](#)
- [kiwi.partitioner.base, 122](#)
- [kiwi.partitioner.dasd, 123](#)
- [kiwi.partitioner.gpt, 124](#)
- [kiwi.partitioner.msdos, 125](#)
- [kiwi.path, 206](#)
- [kiwi.privileges, 207](#)
- [kiwi.repository, 132](#)
- [kiwi.repository.base, 126](#)
- [kiwi.repository.template, 126](#)
- [kiwi.repository.template.apt, 126](#)
- [kiwi.repository.yum, 128](#)
- [kiwi.repository.zypper, 130](#)
- [kiwi.runtime_checker, 207](#)
- [kiwi.runtime_config, 209](#)
- [kiwi.solver, 163](#)
- [kiwi.solver.repository, 162](#)
- [kiwi.solver.repository.base, 161](#)
- [kiwi.solver.repository.rpm_dir, 162](#)
- [kiwi.solver.repository.rpm_md, 161](#)
- [kiwi.solver.repository.suse, 162](#)
- [kiwi.solver.sat, 162](#)
- [kiwi.storage, 146](#)
- [kiwi.storage.device_provider, 139](#)
- [kiwi.storage.disk, 140](#)
- [kiwi.storage.loop_device, 142](#)
- [kiwi.storage.luks_device, 143](#)
- [kiwi.storage.mapped_device, 144](#)
- [kiwi.storage.raid_device, 144](#)
- [kiwi.storage.setup, 145](#)
- [kiwi.storage.subformat, 139](#)
- [kiwi.storage.subformat.base, 133](#)
- [kiwi.storage.subformat.gce, 135](#)
- [kiwi.storage.subformat.ova, 135](#)
- [kiwi.storage.subformat.qcow2, 136](#)
- [kiwi.storage.subformat.template, 133](#)
- [kiwi.storage.subformat.template.vmware_settings, 132](#)
- [kiwi.storage.subformat.vagrant_libvirt, 136](#)
- [kiwi.storage.subformat.vdi, 137](#)
- [kiwi.storage.subformat.vhd, 137](#)
- [kiwi.storage.subformat.vhdfixed, 138](#)
- [kiwi.storage.subformat.vhdx, 138](#)
- [kiwi.storage.subformat.vmdk, 139](#)
- [kiwi.system, 160](#)
- [kiwi.system.identifier, 146](#)
- [kiwi.system.kernel, 147](#)
- [kiwi.system.prepare, 148](#)
- [kiwi.system.profile, 150](#)
- [kiwi.system.result, 150](#)
- [kiwi.system.root_bind, 152](#)
- [kiwi.system.root_init, 153](#)
- [kiwi.system.setup, 153](#)
- [kiwi.system.shell, 156](#)
- [kiwi.system.size, 157](#)
- [kiwi.system.uri, 158](#)
- [kiwi.system.users, 159](#)
- [kiwi.tasks, 166](#)
- [kiwi.tasks.base, 163](#)
- [kiwi.tasks.result_bundle, 164](#)
- [kiwi.tasks.result_list, 164](#)
- [kiwi.tasks.system_build, 165](#)
- [kiwi.tasks.system_create, 165](#)
- [kiwi.tasks.system_prepare, 165](#)
- [kiwi.tasks.system_update, 166](#)
- [kiwi.utils, 169](#)
- [kiwi.utils.block, 166](#)
- [kiwi.utils.checksum, 167](#)
- [kiwi.utils.compress, 167](#)
- [kiwi.utils.sync, 168](#)
- [kiwi.utils.sysconfig, 169](#)
- [kiwi.version, 211](#)
- [kiwi.volume_manager, 174](#)
- [kiwi.volume_manager.base, 169](#)
- [kiwi.volume_manager.btrfs, 172](#)
- [kiwi.volume_manager.lvm, 173](#)
- [kiwi.xml_description, 211](#)
- [kiwi.xml_state, 212](#)

A

accumulate_files()
 (kiwi.system.size.SystemSize
 method), 157
 accumulate_mbyte_file_sizes()
 (kiwi.system.size.SystemSize
 method), 157
 activate_boot_partition()
 (kiwi.storage.disk.Disk method),
 140
 add() (kiwi.system.profile.Profile method),
 150
 add() (kiwi.system.result.Result method), 150
 add_container_config_label()
 (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method),
 212
 add_efi_loader_parameters()
 (kiwi.iso_tools.base.IsoToolsBase
 method), 111
 add_efi_loader_parameters()
 (kiwi.iso_tools.cdrtools.IsoToolsCdrTools
 method), 112
 add_repo() (kiwi.repository.base.RepositoryBase
 method), 127
 add_repo() (kiwi.repository.yum.RepositoryYum
 method), 128
 add_repo() (kiwi.repository.zypper.RepositoryZypper
 method), 130
 add_repository() (kiwi.solver.sat.Sat method),
 162
 add_repository() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState
 method), 212
 alias() (kiwi.system.uri.Uri method), 158
 App (class in kiwi.app), 175
 append_files() (kiwi.archive.tar.ArchiveTar

 method), 77
 append_unpartitioned_space()
 (kiwi.builder.disk.DiskBuilder
 method), 98
 apply_attributes_on_volume()
 (kiwi.volume_manager.base.VolumeManagerBase
 method), 170
 ArchiveBuilder (class in kiwi.builder.archive),
 96
 ArchiveCpio (class in kiwi.archive.cpio), 76
 ArchiveTar (class in kiwi.archive.tar), 77

B

bind_mount() (kiwi.mount_manager.MountManager
 method), 205
 bios_mode() (kiwi.firmware.FirmWare
 method), 200
 BlockID (class in kiwi.utils.block), 166
 boot_partition_size()
 (kiwi.storage.setup.DiskSetup
 method), 145
 BootImage (class in kiwi.boot.image), 82
 BootImageBase (class in
 kiwi.boot.image.base), 78
 BootImageDracut (class in
 kiwi.boot.image.dracut), 80
 BootImageKiwi (class in
 kiwi.boot.image.builtin_kiwi), 81
 BootLoaderConfig (class in
 kiwi.bootloader.config), 90
 BootLoaderConfigBase (class in
 kiwi.bootloader.config.base), 82
 BootLoaderConfigGrub2 (class in
 kiwi.bootloader.config.grub2), 86
 BootLoaderConfigIsoLinux (class in
 kiwi.bootloader.config.isolinux),

88			(kiwi.runtime_checker.RuntimeChecker
BootLoaderConfigZipl	(class	in	method), 208
	kiwi.bootloader.config.zipl), 89		check_dracut_module_for_disk_overlay_in_package_list()
BootLoaderInstall	(class	in	(kiwi.runtime_checker.RuntimeChecker
	kiwi.bootloader.install), 93		method), 208
BootLoaderInstallBase	(class	in	check_dracut_module_for_live_iso_in_package_list()
	kiwi.bootloader.install.base), 91		(kiwi.runtime_checker.RuntimeChecker
BootLoaderInstallGrub2	(class	in	method), 208
	kiwi.bootloader.install.grub2), 91		check_dracut_module_for_oem_install_in_package_list()
BootLoaderInstallZipl	(class	in	(kiwi.runtime_checker.RuntimeChecker
	kiwi.bootloader.install.zipl), 92		method), 208
BootLoaderTemplateGrub2	(class	in	check_efi_mode_for_disk_overlay_correctly_setup()
	kiwi.bootloader.template.grub2), 93		(kiwi.runtime_checker.RuntimeChecker
			method), 208
BootLoaderTemplateIsoLinux	(class	in	check_for_root_permissions()
	kiwi.bootloader.template.isolinux), 95		(kiwi.privileges.Privileges class
			method), 207
BootLoaderTemplateZipl	(class	in	check_grub_efi_installed_for_efi_firmware()
	kiwi.bootloader.template.zipl), 96		(kiwi.runtime_checker.RuntimeChecker
			method), 208
			check_image_include_repos_publicly_resolvable()
			(kiwi.runtime_checker.RuntimeChecker
			method), 208
			check_mediacheck_only_for_x86_arch()
			(kiwi.runtime_checker.RuntimeChecker
			method), 208
			check_repositories_configured()
			(kiwi.runtime_checker.RuntimeChecker
			method), 209
			check_target_directory_not_in_shared_cache()
			(kiwi.runtime_checker.RuntimeChecker
			method), 209
			check_volume_label_used_with_lvm()
			(kiwi.runtime_checker.RuntimeChecker
			method), 209
			check_volume_setup_has_no_root_definition()
			(kiwi.runtime_checker.RuntimeChecker
			method), 209
			check_xen_uniquely_setup_as_server_or_guest()
			(kiwi.runtime_checker.RuntimeChecker
			method), 209
			checksum (class in kiwi.utils.checksum), 167
check_consistent_kernel_in_boot_and_system_image()	(kiwi.runtime_checker.RuntimeChecker		cleanup()
	method), 207		(kiwi.system.root_bind.RootBind
			method), 152
check_docker_tool_chain_installed()	cleanup()	(kiwi.system.setup.SystemSetup	
	(kiwi.runtime_checker.RuntimeChecker	method), 154	
	method), 208		cleanup_requests()
check_dracut_module_for_disk_oem_in_package_list()	(kiwi.package_manager.base.PackageManagerBase		

method), 115

cleanup_unused_repos()
(kiwi.repository.base.RepositoryBase method), 127

cleanup_unused_repos()
(kiwi.repository.yum.RepositoryYum method), 129

cleanup_unused_repos()
(kiwi.repository.zypper.RepositoryZypper method), 131

Cli (class in kiwi.cli), 175

CliTask (class in kiwi.tasks.base), 163

ColorFormatter (class in kiwi.logger), 202

ColorMessage (class in kiwi.logger), 202

Command (class in kiwi.command), 176

CommandIterator (class in kiwi.command_process), 177

CommandProcess (class in kiwi.command_process), 178

Compress (class in kiwi.utils.compress), 167

compress (kiwi.system.result.result_file_type attribute), 151

ContainerBuilder (class in kiwi.builder.container), 97

ContainerImage (class in kiwi.container), 105

ContainerImageDocker (class in kiwi.container.docker), 104

ContainerImageOCI (class in kiwi.container.oci), 104

ContainerSetup (class in kiwi.container.setup), 104

ContainerSetupBase (class in kiwi.container.setup.base), 102

ContainerSetupDocker (class in kiwi.container.setup.docker), 104

copy_bootdelete_packages()
(kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 212

copy_bootincluded_archives()
(kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 212

copy_bootincluded_packages()
(kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 213

copy_build_type_attributes()
(kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 213

copy_displayname()
(kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 213

copy_drivers_sections()
(kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 213

copy_kernel() (kiwi.system.kernel.Kernel method), 147

copy_machine_section()
(kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 213

copy_name() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 213

copy_oemconfig_section()
(kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 213

copy_preferences_subsections()
(kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 213

copy_repository_sections()
(kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 213

copy_strip_sections()
(kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 214

copy_systemdisk_section()
(kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 214

copy_xen_hypervisor()
(kiwi.system.kernel.Kernel method), 147

create() (kiwi.archive.cpio.ArchiveCpio method), 77

create() (kiwi.archive.tar.ArchiveTar method), 77

create() (kiwi.builder.archive.ArchiveBuilder method), 97

create() (kiwi.builder.container.ContainerBuilder method), 97

create() (kiwi.builder.disk.DiskBuilder method), 98

create() (kiwi.builder.filesystem.FileSystemBuilder method), 99

create() (kiwi.builder.live.LiveImageBuilder method), 101

create() (kiwi.builder.pxe.PxeBuilder method), 102

create() (kiwi.container.oci.ContainerImageOCI method), 105

create() (kiwi.partitionner.base.PartitionerBase method), 122

create() (kiwi.partitionner.dasd.PartitionerDasd method), 123

create() (kiwi.partitionner.gpt.PartitionerGpt method), 124

create() (kiwi.partitionner.msdos.PartitionerMsDos method), 125

create() (kiwi.path.Path class method), 206

create() (kiwi.storage.loop_device.LoopDevice method), 143

create() (kiwi.system.profile.Profile method), 150

create() (kiwi.system.root_init.RootInit method), 153

create_boot_partition() (kiwi.storage.disk.Disk method), 140

create_crypto_luks() (kiwi.storage.luks_device.LuksDevice method), 143

create_crypttab() (kiwi.storage.luks_device.LuksDevice method), 143

create_degraded_raid() (kiwi.storage.raid_device.RaidDevice method), 144

create_disk() (kiwi.builder.disk.DiskBuilder method), 98

create_disk_format() (kiwi.builder.disk.DiskBuilder method), 98

create_efi_csm_partition() (kiwi.storage.disk.Disk method), 141

create_efi_partition() (kiwi.storage.disk.Disk method), 141

create_efi_path() (kiwi.bootloader.config.base.BootLoaderConfigBase method), 82

create_fstab() (kiwi.container.setup.base.ContainerSetupBase method), 103

create_fstab() (kiwi.system.setup.SystemSetup method), 154

create_gnu_gzip_compressed() (kiwi.archive.tar.ArchiveTar method), 78

create_header_end_block() (kiwi.iso_tools.iso.Iso method), 114

create_header_end_marker() (kiwi.iso_tools.iso.Iso method), 114

create_hybrid() (kiwi.iso_tools.iso.Iso class method), 114

create_hybrid_mbr() (kiwi.storage.disk.Disk method), 141

create_image_format() (kiwi.storage.subformat.base.DiskFormatBase method), 133

create_image_format() (kiwi.storage.subformat.gce.DiskFormatGce method), 135

create_image_format() (kiwi.storage.subformat.ova.DiskFormatOva method), 135

create_image_format() (kiwi.storage.subformat.qcow2.DiskFormatQcow2 method), 136

create_image_format() (kiwi.storage.subformat.vagrant_libvirt.DiskFormatVagrantLibvirt method), 136

create_image_format() (kiwi.storage.subformat.vdi.DiskFormatVdi method), 137

create_image_format() (kiwi.storage.subformat.vhd.DiskFormatVhd method), 137

create_image_format() (kiwi.storage.subformat.vhdfixed.DiskFormatVhdFixed method), 138

create_image_format() (kiwi.storage.subformat.vhdx.DiskFormatVhdx method), 138

create_image_format() (kiwi.storage.subformat.vmdk.DiskFormatVmdk method), 139

create_init_link_from_linuxrc() (kiwi.system.setup.SystemSetup method), 155

create_initrd() (kiwi.boot.image.base.BootImageBase method), 79

create_initrd() (kiwi.boot.image.builtin_kiwi.BootImageKiwi method), 81

<code>create_initrd()</code> (<code>kiwi.boot.image.dracut.BootImageDracut</code> method), 80	<code>create_on_file()</code> (<code>kiwi.filesystem.clicfs.FileSystemClicFs</code> method), 107
<code>create_install_iso()</code> (<code>kiwi.builder.install.InstallImageBuilder</code> method), 100	<code>create_on_file()</code> (<code>kiwi.filesystem.isofs.FileSystemIsoFs</code> method), 109
<code>create_install_media()</code> (<code>kiwi.builder.disk.DiskBuilder</code> method), 99	<code>create_on_file()</code> (<code>kiwi.filesystem.squashfs.FileSystemSquashFs</code> method), 110
<code>create_install_pxe_archive()</code> (<code>kiwi.builder.install.InstallImageBuilder</code> method), 100	<code>create_prep_partition()</code> (<code>kiwi.storage.disk.Disk</code> method), 141
<code>create_iso()</code> (<code>kiwi.iso_tools.base.IsoToolsBase</code> method), 112	<code>create_raid_config()</code> (<code>kiwi.storage.raid_device.RaidDevice</code> method), 145
<code>create_iso()</code> (<code>kiwi.iso_tools.cdrtools.IsoToolsCdrTools</code> method), 113	<code>create_recovery_archive()</code> (<code>kiwi.system.setup.SystemSetup</code> method), 155
<code>create_match_method()</code> (<code>kiwi.command_process.CommandProcess</code> method), 178	<code>create_repository_solvable()</code> (<code>kiwi.solver.repository.base.SolverRepositoryBase</code> method), 161
<code>create_mbr()</code> (<code>kiwi.storage.disk.Disk</code> method), 141	<code>create_root_lvm_partition()</code> (<code>kiwi.storage.disk.Disk</code> method), 141
<code>create_on_device()</code> (<code>kiwi.filesystem.base.FileSystemBase</code> method), 106	<code>create_root_partition()</code> (<code>kiwi.storage.disk.Disk</code> method), 141
<code>create_on_device()</code> (<code>kiwi.filesystem.btrfs.FileSystemBtrfs</code> method), 107	<code>create_root_raid_partition()</code> (<code>kiwi.storage.disk.Disk</code> method), 141
<code>create_on_device()</code> (<code>kiwi.filesystem.ext2.FileSystemExt2</code> method), 108	<code>create_root_readonly_partition()</code> (<code>kiwi.storage.disk.Disk</code> method), 141
<code>create_on_device()</code> (<code>kiwi.filesystem.ext3.FileSystemExt3</code> method), 108	<code>create_spare_partition()</code> (<code>kiwi.storage.disk.Disk</code> method), 142
<code>create_on_device()</code> (<code>kiwi.filesystem.ext4.FileSystemExt4</code> method), 108	<code>create_volume_paths_in_root_dir()</code> (<code>kiwi.volume_manager.base.VolumeManagerBase</code> method), 170
<code>create_on_device()</code> (<code>kiwi.filesystem.fat16.FileSystemFat16</code> method), 109	<code>create_volumes()</code> (<code>kiwi.volume_manager.base.VolumeManagerBase</code> method), 170
<code>create_on_device()</code> (<code>kiwi.filesystem.fat32.FileSystemFat32</code> method), 109	<code>create_volumes()</code> (<code>kiwi.volume_manager.btrfs.VolumeManagerBtrfs</code> method), 172
<code>create_on_device()</code> (<code>kiwi.filesystem.xfs.FileSystemXfs</code> method), 111	<code>create_volumes()</code> (<code>kiwi.volume_manager.lvm.VolumeManagerLVM</code> method), 173
<code>create_on_file()</code> (<code>kiwi.filesystem.base.FileSystemBase</code> method), 106	

- create_xz_compressed()
(kiwi.archive.tar.ArchiveTar method),
78
- credentials_file_name() (kiwi.system.uri.Uri
method), 158
- customize() (kiwi.system.size.SystemSize
method), 157
- ## D
- database_consistent()
(kiwi.package_manager.base.PackageManagerBase
method), 115
- database_consistent()
(kiwi.package_manager.yum.PackageManagerYum
method), 117
- database_consistent()
(kiwi.package_manager.zypper.PackageManagerZypper
method), 120
- DataSync (class in kiwi.utils.sync), 168
- deactivate_bootloader_setup()
(kiwi.container.setup.base.ContainerSetupBase
method), 103
- deactivate_root_filesystem_check()
(kiwi.container.setup.base.ContainerSetupBase
method), 103
- deactivate_systemd_service()
(kiwi.container.setup.base.ContainerSetupBase
method), 103
- DebugFilter (class in kiwi.logger), 203
- Defaults (class in kiwi.defaults), 179
- delete() (kiwi.system.profile.Profile method),
150
- delete() (kiwi.system.root_init.RootInit
method), 153
- delete_all_repos()
(kiwi.repository.base.RepositoryBase
method), 127
- delete_all_repos()
(kiwi.repository.yum.RepositoryYum
method), 129
- delete_all_repos()
(kiwi.repository.zypper.RepositoryZypper
method), 131
- delete_packages()
(kiwi.system.prepare.SystemPrepare
method), 148
- delete_repo() (kiwi.repository.base.RepositoryBase
method), 127
- delete_repo() (kiwi.repository.yum.RepositoryYum
method), 129
- delete_repo() (kiwi.repository.zypper.RepositoryZypper
method), 131
- delete_repo_cache()
(kiwi.repository.base.RepositoryBase
method), 127
- delete_repo_cache()
(kiwi.repository.yum.RepositoryYum
method), 129
- delete_repo_cache()
(kiwi.repository.zypper.RepositoryZypper
method), 131
- delete_repo_sections()
(kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method),
214
- delete_repo_sections_used_for_build()
(kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method),
214
- DeviceProvider (class in
kiwi.storage.device_provider), 139
- disable_cleanup()
(kiwi.boot.image.base.BootImageBase
method), 79
- Disk (class in kiwi.storage.disk), 140
- DiskBuilder (class in kiwi.builder.disk), 98
- DiskFormat (class in kiwi.storage.subformat),
139
- DiskFormatBase (class in
kiwi.storage.subformat.base), 133
- DiskFormatGce (class in
kiwi.storage.subformat.gce), 135
- DiskFormatOva (class in
kiwi.storage.subformat.ova), 135
- DiskFormatQcow2 (class in
kiwi.storage.subformat.qcow2),
136
- DiskFormatVagrantLibVirt (class in
kiwi.storage.subformat.vagrant_libvirt),
136
- DiskFormatVdi (class in
kiwi.storage.subformat.vdi), 137
- DiskFormatVhd (class in
kiwi.storage.subformat.vhd), 137
- DiskFormatVhdFixed (class in
kiwi.storage.subformat.vhdfixed),
138
- DiskFormatVhdx (class in

- kiwi.storage.subformat.vhdx), 138
- DiskFormatVmdk (class in kiwi.storage.subformat.vmdk), 139
- DiskSetup (class in kiwi.storage.setup), 145
- download_from_repository() (kiwi.solver.repository.base.SolverRepositoryBase method), 161
- dump() (kiwi.boot.image.base.BootImageBase method), 79
- dump() (kiwi.system.result.Result method), 151
- dump_reload_package_database() (kiwi.package_manager.base.PackageManagerBase method), 115
- dump_reload_package_database() (kiwi.package_manager.yum.PackageManagerYum method), 118
- dump_reload_package_database() (kiwi.package_manager.zypper.PackageManagerZypper method), 120
- E**
- ec2_mode() (kiwi.firmware.FirmWare method), 200
- efi_mode() (kiwi.firmware.FirmWare method), 200
- enable_cleanup() (kiwi.boot.image.base.BootImageBase method), 79
- ErrorFilter (class in kiwi.logger), 203
- export_modprobe_setup() (kiwi.system.setup.SystemSetup method), 155
- export_package_list() (kiwi.system.setup.SystemSetup method), 155
- export_package_verification() (kiwi.system.setup.SystemSetup method), 155
- extract() (kiwi.archive.cpio.ArchiveCpio method), 77
- extract() (kiwi.archive.tar.ArchiveTar method), 78
- extras() (in module kiwi.kiwi), 201
- F**
- failsafe_boot_entry_requested() (kiwi.bootloader.config.base.BootLoaderConfigBase method), 83
- filename (kiwi.system.result.result_file_type attribute), 151
- FileSystem (class in kiwi.filesystem), 111
- FileSystemBase (class in kiwi.filesystem.base), 106
- FileSystemBtrfs (class in kiwi.filesystem.btrfs), 107
- FileSystemBuilder (class in kiwi.builder.filesystem), 99
- FileSystemClicFs (class in kiwi.filesystem.clicfs), 107
- FileSystemExt2 (class in kiwi.filesystem.ext2), 108
- FileSystemExt3 (class in kiwi.filesystem.ext3), 108
- FileSystemExt4 (class in kiwi.filesystem.ext4), 108
- FileSystemFat16 (class in kiwi.filesystem.fat16), 109
- FileSystemFat32 (class in kiwi.filesystem.fat32), 109
- FileSystemIsoFs (class in kiwi.filesystem.isoFs), 109
- FileSystemSetup (class in kiwi.filesystem.setup), 110
- FileSystemSquashFs (class in kiwi.filesystem.squashfs), 110
- FileSystemXfs (class in kiwi.filesystem.xfs), 111
- filter() (kiwi.logger.DebugFilter method), 203
- filter() (kiwi.logger.ErrorFilter method), 203
- filter() (kiwi.logger.InfoFilter method), 204
- filter() (kiwi.logger.LoggerSchedulerFilter method), 205
- filter() (kiwi.logger.WarningFilter method), 205
- FirmWare (class in kiwi.firmware), 200
- fix_boot_catalog() (kiwi.iso_tools.iso.Iso class method), 114
- format() (kiwi.logger.ColorFormatter method), 202
- format_message() (kiwi.logger.ColorMessage method), 203
- G**
- get() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults method), 179

<code>get_archive_image_types()</code> (<code>kiwi.defaults.Defaults</code> class method), 179	(<code>kiwi.xml_state.XMLState</code> method), 214
<code>get_blkid()</code> (<code>kiwi.utils.block.BlockID</code> method), 166	<code>get_bootstrap_packages_sections()</code> (<code>kiwi.xml_state.XMLState</code> method), 214
<code>get_boot_cmdline()</code> (<code>kiwi.bootloader.config.base.BootLoaderConfigBase</code> method), 83	<code>get_bootstrap_products()</code> (<code>kiwi.xml_state.XMLState</code> method), 215
<code>get_boot_description_directory()</code> (<code>kiwi.boot.image.base.BootImageBase</code> method), 79	<code>get_build_type_containerconfig_section()</code> (<code>kiwi.xml_state.XMLState</code> method), 215
<code>get_boot_image_description_path()</code> (<code>kiwi.defaults.Defaults</code> class method), 179	<code>get_build_type_format_options()</code> (<code>kiwi.xml_state.XMLState</code> method), 215
<code>get_boot_image_strip_file()</code> (<code>kiwi.defaults.Defaults</code> class method), 179	<code>get_build_type_machine_section()</code> (<code>kiwi.xml_state.XMLState</code> method), 215
<code>get_boot_label()</code> (<code>kiwi.storage.setup.DiskSetup</code> method), 145	<code>get_build_type_name()</code> (<code>kiwi.xml_state.XMLState</code> method), 215
<code>get_boot_names()</code> (<code>kiwi.boot.image.base.BootImageBase</code> method), 79	<code>get_build_type_oemconfig_section()</code> (<code>kiwi.xml_state.XMLState</code> method), 215
<code>get_boot_names()</code> (<code>kiwi.boot.image.builtin_kiwi.BootImageKiwi</code> method), 81	<code>get_build_type_pxdeploy_section()</code> (<code>kiwi.xml_state.XMLState</code> method), 215
<code>get_boot_names()</code> (<code>kiwi.boot.image.dracut.BootImageDracut</code> method), 80	<code>get_build_type_size()</code> (<code>kiwi.xml_state.XMLState</code> method), 215
<code>get_boot_path()</code> (<code>kiwi.bootloader.config.base.BootLoaderConfigBase</code> method), 83	<code>get_build_type_spare_part_size()</code> (<code>kiwi.xml_state.XMLState</code> method), 216
<code>get_boot_theme()</code> (<code>kiwi.bootloader.config.base.BootLoaderConfigBase</code> method), 83	<code>get_build_type_system_disk_section()</code> (<code>kiwi.xml_state.XMLState</code> method), 216
<code>get_boot_timeout_seconds()</code> (<code>kiwi.bootloader.config.base.BootLoaderConfigBase</code> method), 83	<code>get_build_type_unpartitioned_bytes()</code> (<code>kiwi.xml_state.XMLState</code> method), 216
<code>get_bootstrap_archives()</code> (<code>kiwi.xml_state.XMLState</code> method), 214	<code>get_build_type_vagrant_config_section()</code> (<code>kiwi.xml_state.XMLState</code> method), 216
<code>get_bootstrap_collection_type()</code> (<code>kiwi.xml_state.XMLState</code> method), 214	<code>get_build_type_vmconfig_entries()</code> (<code>kiwi.xml_state.XMLState</code> method), 216
<code>get_bootstrap_collections()</code> (<code>kiwi.xml_state.XMLState</code> method), 214	<code>get_build_type_vmdisk_section()</code> (<code>kiwi.xml_state.XMLState</code> method), 216
<code>get_bootstrap_packages()</code>	<code>get_build_type_vmdvd_section()</code>

(kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 216	180
get_build_type_vmnics_entries() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 216	get_default_container_tag() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 180
get_buildservice_env_name() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 179	get_default_disk_start_sector() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 180
get_byte_size() (kiwi.storage.device_provider.DeviceProvider method), 139	get_default_efi_boot_mbytes() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 180
get_canonical_volume_list() (kiwi.volume_manager.base.VolumeManagerBase method), 170	get_default_efi_partition_table_type() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 180
get_collection_type() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 216	get_default_firmware() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 181
get_collections() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 217	get_default_inode_size() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 181
get_command() (kiwi.cli.Cli method), 175	get_default_legacy_bios_mbytes() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 181
get_command_args() (kiwi.cli.Cli method), 175	get_default_live_iso_root_filesystem() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 181
get_common_functions_file() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 179	get_default_live_iso_type() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 181
get_container_compression() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 180	get_default_packager_tool() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 181
get_container_compression() (kiwi.runtime_config.RuntimeConfig method), 209	get_default_prep_mbytes() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 181
get_container_config() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 217	get_default_rpmdb_path() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 181
get_container_image_types() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 180	get_default_uri_type() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 182
get_container_name() (kiwi.container.setup.base.ContainerSetupBase class method), 103	get_default_video_mode() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 182
get_default_boot_mbytes() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 180	get_default_volume_group_name() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 182
get_default_boot_timeout_seconds() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 180	get_derived_from_image_uri() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 217
get_default_container_name() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method),	

[get_device\(\) \(kiwi.storage.device_provider.DeviceProvider method\), 146](#)
[get_device\(\) \(kiwi.storage.disk.Disk method\), 142](#)
[get_device\(\) \(kiwi.storage.loop_device.LoopDevice method\), 143](#)
[get_device\(\) \(kiwi.storage.luks_device.LuksDevice method\), 143](#)
[get_device\(\) \(kiwi.storage.mapped_device.MappedDevice method\), 144](#)
[get_device\(\) \(kiwi.storage.raid_device.RaidDevice method\), 145](#)
[get_device\(\) \(kiwi.volume_manager.base.VolumeManagerBase method\), 170](#)
[get_device\(\) \(kiwi.volume_manager.lvm.VolumeManagerLVM method\), 173](#)
[get_disk_format_types\(\) \(kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method\), 182](#)
[get_disk_image_types\(\) \(kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method\), 182](#)
[get_disk_start_sector\(\) \(kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method\), 217](#)
[get_disk_template\(\) \(kiwi.bootloader.template.grub2.BootLoaderTemplateGrub2 method\), 93](#)
[get_disksize_mbytes\(\) \(kiwi.storage.setup.DiskSetup method\), 145](#)
[get_distribution_name_from_boot_attribute\(\) \(kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method\), 217](#)
[get_dracut_conf_name\(\) \(kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method\), 182](#)
[get_drivers_list\(\) \(kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method\), 217](#)
[get_ec2_capable_firmware_names\(\) \(kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method\), 182](#)
[get_efi_capable_firmware_names\(\) \(kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method\), 182](#)
[get_efi_image_name\(\) \(kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method\), 183](#)
[get_efi_label\(\) \(kiwi.storage.setup.DiskSetup method\), 140](#)
[get_efi_module_directory_name\(\) \(kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method\), 183](#)
[get_efi_partition_size\(\) \(kiwi.firmware.FirmWare method\), 200](#)
[get_error_code\(\) \(kiwi.command_process.CommandIterator method\), 178](#)
[get_error_output\(\) \(kiwi.command_process.CommandIterator method\), 178](#)
[get_exclude_list_for_root_data_sync\(\) \(kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method\), 183](#)
[get_extension_xml_data\(\) \(kiwi.xml_description.XMLDescription method\), 211](#)
[get_failsafe_kernel_options\(\) \(kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method\), 183](#)
[get_filesystem\(\) \(kiwi.utils.block.BlockID method\), 166](#)
[get_filesystem_image_types\(\) \(kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method\), 183](#)
[get_firmware_types\(\) \(kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method\), 183](#)
[get_format\(\) \(kiwi.utils.compress.Compress method\), 168](#)
[get_fragment\(\) \(kiwi.system.uri.Uri method\), 158](#)
[get_fs_mount_option_list\(\) \(kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method\), 217](#)
[get_fstab\(\) \(kiwi.volume_manager.base.VolumeManagerBase method\), 170](#)
[get_fstab\(\) \(kiwi.volume_manager.btrfs.VolumeManagerBtrfs method\), 172](#)
[get_fstab\(\) \(kiwi.volume_manager.lvm.VolumeManagerLVM method\), 173](#)
[get_gfxmode\(\) \(kiwi.bootloader.config.base.BootLoaderConfigBase method\), 83](#)
[get_global_args\(\) \(kiwi.cli.Cli method\), 175](#)
[get_grub_basic_modules\(\) \(kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method\), 183](#)

183
get_grub_bios_modules()
(kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method),
184
get_grub_boot_directory_name()
(kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method),
184
get_grub_efi_modules()
(kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method),
184
get_grub_ofw_modules()
(kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method),
184
get_grub_path() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class
method), 184
get_host_template()
(kiwi.repository.template.apt.PackageManagerTemplateAptGet
method), 126
get_id() (kiwi.partitioner.base.PartitionerBase
method), 123
get_id() (kiwi.system.identifier.SystemIdentifier
method), 146
get_image_packages_sections()
(kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method),
218
get_image_template()
(kiwi.repository.template.apt.PackageManagerTemplateAptGet
method), 126
get_image_version()
(kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method),
218
get_imported_root_image()
(kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method),
184
get_initrd_system()
(kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method),
218
get_install_image_boot_default()
(kiwi.bootloader.config.base.BootLoaderConfigBase
method), 84
get_install_message_template()
(kiwi.bootloader.template.isolinux.BootLoaderTemplateIsolinux
method), 95
get_install_template()
(kiwi.bootloader.template.grub2.BootLoaderTemplateGrub2
method), 93
get_install_template()
(kiwi.bootloader.template.isolinux.BootLoaderTemplateIsolinux
method), 95
get_install_volume_id()
(kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method),
185
get_iso_boot_path() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults
class method), 185
get_iso_template()
(kiwi.bootloader.template.grub2.BootLoaderTemplateGrub2
method), 94
get_iso_tool_category()
(kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method),
185
get_iso_tool_category()
(kiwi.runtime_config.RuntimeConfig
method), 210
get_kernel() (kiwi.system.kernel.Kernel
method), 146
get_label() (kiwi.utils.block.BlockID
method), 166
get_legacy_bios_partition_size()
(kiwi.firmware.FirmWare method),
200
get_live_dracut_module_from_flag()
(kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method),
185
get_live_image_types()
(kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method),
185
get_live_iso_persistent_boot_options()
(kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method),
185
get_lvm_overhead_mbytes()
(kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method),
185
get_max_size_constraint()
(kiwi.runtime_config.RuntimeConfig
method), 210
get_menu_entry_install_title()
(kiwi.bootloader.config.base.BootLoaderConfigBase
method), 84
get_menu_entry_title()
(kiwi.bootloader.config.base.BootLoaderConfigBase
method), 84
get_message_template()
(kiwi.bootloader.template.isolinux.BootLoaderTemplateIsolinux
method), 95
get_min_volume_mbytes()
(kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method),
185

- 186
- get_multiboot_disk_template() (kiwi.bootloader.template.grub2.BootLoaderTemplateGrub2 method), 94
- get_multiboot_install_template() (kiwi.bootloader.template.grub2.BootLoaderTemplateGrub2 method), 94
- get_multiboot_install_template() (kiwi.bootloader.template.isolinux.BootLoaderTemplateIsoLinux method), 95
- get_multiboot_iso_template() (kiwi.bootloader.template.grub2.BootLoaderTemplateGrub2 method), 94
- get_multiboot_template() (kiwi.bootloader.template.isolinux.BootLoaderTemplateIsoLinux method), 95
- get_network_image_types() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 186
- get_obs_download_server_url() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 186
- get_obs_download_server_url() (kiwi.runtime_config.RuntimeConfig method), 210
- get_oemconfig_oem_multipath_scan() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 218
- get_package_manager() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 218
- get_package_sections() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 218
- get_packages_sections() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 219
- get_partition_table_type() (kiwi.firmware.FirmWare method), 200
- get_pid() (kiwi.command_process.CommandIterator method), 178
- get_preferences_sections() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 219
- get_prep_partition_size() (kiwi.firmware.FirmWare method), 201
- get_preparer() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 186
- get_public_partition_id_map() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 219
- get_public_partition_id_map() (kiwi.storage.disk.Disk method), 142
- get_publisher() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 186
- get_qemu_option_list() (kiwi.storage.subformat.base.DiskFormatBase method), 124
- get_recovery_spare_mbytes() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 186
- get_repository_sections() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 219
- get_repository_sections_used_for_build() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 219
- get_repository_sections_used_in_image() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 219
- get_results() (kiwi.system.result.Result method), 151
- get_root_label() (kiwi.storage.setup.DiskSetup method), 146
- get_rpm_check_signatures() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 220
- get_rpm_excludedocs() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 220
- get_s390_disk_block_size() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 186
- get_s390_disk_type() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 186
- get_schema_file() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 186
- get_servicename() (kiwi.cli.Cli method), 176
- get_shared_cache_location() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 187
- get_shim_loader() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 187

get_shim_vendor_directory() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 187	(kiwi.storage.subformat.gce.DiskFormatGce method), 135
get_signed_grub_loader() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 187	get_template() (kiwi.bootloader.template.isolinux.BootLoaderTemp method), 96
get_size_mbytes() (kiwi.filesystem.setup.FileSystemSetup method), 110	get_template() (kiwi.bootloader.template.zipl.BootLoaderTemplateZ method), 96
get_snapper_config_template_file() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 187	get_template() (kiwi.storage.subformat.template.vmware_settings.V method), 132
get_solvable_location() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 187	get_to_become_deleted_packages() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 221
get_strip_files_to_delete() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 220	get_tool_name() (kiwi.iso_tools.base.IsoToolsBase method), 112
get_strip_libraries_to_keep() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 220	get_tool_name() (kiwi.iso_tools.cdrtools.IsoToolsCdrTools method), 113
get_strip_list() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 220	get_unsigned_grub_loader() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 188
get_strip_tools_to_keep() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 220	get_user_groups() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 221
get_system_archives() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 220	get_users() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 221
get_system_collection_type() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 220	get_users_sections() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 222
get_system_collections() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 221	get_uuid() (kiwi.storage.device_provider.DeviceProvider method), 140
get_system_ignore_packages() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 221	get_uuid() (kiwi.utils.block.BlockID method), 166
get_system_packages() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 221	get_video_mode_map() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 188
get_system_products() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 221	get_volume_group_name() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 222
get_target_file_path_for_format() (kiwi.storage.subformat.base.DiskFormatBase method), 134	get_volume_id() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 188
get_target_file_path_for_format()	get_volume_management() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 222
	get_volume_mbsize() (kiwi.volume_manager.base.VolumeManagerBase method), 170

[get_volumes\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.volume_manager.base.VolumeManagerBase class method), 171

[get_volumes\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.volume_manager.btrfs.VolumeManagerBtrfs class method), 172

[get_volumes\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.volume_manager.lvm.VolumeManagerLVM class method), 174

[get_volumes\(\)](#) (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState class method), 222

[get_xen_hypervisor\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.system.kernel.Kernel class method), 148

[get_xsl_stylesheet_file\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 188

[get_xz_compression_options\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 188

[get_xz_options\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.runtime_config.RuntimeConfig class method), 210

[getLogLevel\(\)](#) (kiwi.logger.Logger class method), 204

[group_add\(\)](#) (kiwi.system.users.Users class method), 159

[group_exists\(\)](#) (kiwi.system.users.Users class method), 159

[gzip\(\)](#) (kiwi.utils.compress.Compress class method), 168

H

[has_iso_hybrid_capability\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.iso_tools.base.IsoToolsBase class method), 112

[has_iso_hybrid_capability\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.iso_tools.cdrtools.IsoToolsCdrTools class method), 113

[has_raw_disk\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.storage.subformat.base.DiskFormatBase class method), 134

[Help](#) (class in kiwi.help), 201

I

[ImageBuilder](#) (class in kiwi.builder), 102

[import_cdroot_files\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.system.setup.SystemSetup class method), 155

[import_description\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.system.setup.SystemSetup class method), 155

[import_image_identifier\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.system.setup.SystemSetup class method), 155

[import_overlay_files\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.system.setup.SystemSetup class method), 155

[import_repositories_marked_as_imageinclude\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.system.setup.SystemSetup class method), 155

[import_shell_environment\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.system.setup.SystemSetup class method), 155

[import_system_description_elements\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.boot.image.base.BootImageBase class method), 79

[import_trusted_keys\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.repository.base.RepositoryBase class method), 127

[import_trusted_keys\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.repository.yum.RepositoryYum class method), 129

[import_trusted_keys\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.repository.zypper.RepositoryZypper class method), 131

[include_file\(\)](#) (kiwi.boot.image.base.BootImageBase class method), 79

[include_file\(\)](#) (kiwi.boot.image.dracut.BootImageDracut class method), 80

[InfoFilter](#) (class in kiwi.logger), 204

[init_iso_creation_parameters\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.iso_tools.base.IsoToolsBase class method), 112

[init_iso_creation_parameters\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.iso_tools.cdrtools.IsoToolsCdrTools class method), 113

[install\(\)](#) (kiwi.bootloader.install.base.BootLoaderInstallBase class method), 91

[install\(\)](#) (kiwi.bootloader.install.grub2.BootLoaderInstallGrub2 class method), 91

[install\(\)](#) (kiwi.bootloader.install.zipl.BootLoaderInstallZipl class method), 92

[install_bootstrap\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.system.prepare.SystemPrepare class method), 148

[install_packages\(\)](#)

(kiwi.system.prepare.SystemPrepare method), 148	is_xen_server() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 223
install_required()	Iso (class in kiwi.iso_tools.iso), 113
(kiwi.bootloader.install.base.BootLoaderInstallBase method), 91	InstallBase (class in kiwi.iso_tools), 115
install_required()	IsoToolsBase (class in kiwi.iso_tools.base), 111
(kiwi.bootloader.install.grub2.BootLoaderInstallGrub2 method), 91	IsoToolsCdrTools (class in kiwi.iso_tools.cdrtools), 112
install_required()	
(kiwi.bootloader.install.zipl.BootLoaderInstallZipl method), 92	K
install_system()	Kernel (class in kiwi.system.kernel), 147
(kiwi.system.prepare.SystemPrepare method), 149	kill() (kiwi.command_process.CommandIterator method), 178
InstallImageBuilder (class in kiwi.builder.install), 100	kiwi (module), 224
invoke_kiwicompat() (kiwi.cli.Cli method), 176	kiwi.app (module), 175
is_buildservice_worker()	kiwi.archive (module), 78
(kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 188	kiwi.archive.cpio (module), 76
is_loop() (kiwi.storage.device_provider.DeviceProvider method), 140	kiwi.archive.tar (module), 77
is_loop() (kiwi.storage.disk.Disk method), 142	kiwi.boot (module), 82
is_loop() (kiwi.storage.loop_device.LoopDevice method), 143	kiwi.boot.image (module), 82
is_loop() (kiwi.storage.luks_device.LuksDevice method), 144	kiwi.boot.image.base (module), 78
is_loop() (kiwi.storage.mapped_device.MappedDevice method), 144	kiwi.boot.image.builtin_kiwi (module), 81
is_loop() (kiwi.storage.raid_device.RaidDevice method), 145	kiwi.boot.image.dracut (module), 80
is_loop() (kiwi.volume_manager.base.VolumeManagerBase method), 171	kiwi.bootloader (module), 96
is_mounted() (kiwi.mount_manager.MountManager method), 205	kiwi.bootloader.config (module), 90
is_obs_public()	kiwi.bootloader.config.base (module), 82
(kiwi.runtime_config.RuntimeConfig method), 211	kiwi.bootloader.config.grub2 (module), 86
is_prepared() (kiwi.boot.image.base.BootImageBase method), 79	kiwi.bootloader.config.isolinux (module), 88
is_public() (kiwi.system.uri.Uri method), 159	kiwi.bootloader.config.zipl (module), 89
is_remote() (kiwi.system.uri.Uri method), 159	kiwi.bootloader.install (module), 93
is_uptodate() (kiwi.solver.repository.base.SolverRepositoryBase method), 161	kiwi.bootloader.install.base (module), 91
is_xen_guest() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 223	kiwi.bootloader.install.grub2 (module), 91
	kiwi.bootloader.install.zipl (module), 92
	kiwi.bootloader.template (module), 96
	kiwi.bootloader.template.grub2 (module), 93
	kiwi.bootloader.template.isolinux (module), 95
	kiwi.bootloader.template.zipl (module), 96
	kiwi.builder (module), 102
	kiwi.builder.archive (module), 96
	kiwi.builder.container (module), 97
	kiwi.builder.disk (module), 98
	kiwi.builder.filesystem (module), 99
	kiwi.builder.install (module), 100
	kiwi.builder.kiwi (module), 101
	kiwi.builder.pxe (module), 101
	kiwi.cli (module), 175
	kiwi.command (module), 176

- kiwi.command_process (module), 177
- kiwi.container (module), 105
- kiwi.container.docker (module), 104
- kiwi.container.oci (module), 104
- kiwi.container.setup (module), 104
- kiwi.container.setup.base (module), 102
- kiwi.container.setup.docker (module), 104
- kiwi.defaults (module), 179
- kiwi.exceptions (module), 189
- kiwi.filesystem (module), 111
- kiwi.filesystem.base (module), 106
- kiwi.filesystem.btrfs (module), 107
- kiwi.filesystem.clicfs (module), 107
- kiwi.filesystem.ext2 (module), 108
- kiwi.filesystem.ext3 (module), 108
- kiwi.filesystem.ext4 (module), 108
- kiwi.filesystem.fat16 (module), 109
- kiwi.filesystem.fat32 (module), 109
- kiwi.filesystem.isofs (module), 109
- kiwi.filesystem.setup (module), 110
- kiwi.filesystem.squashfs (module), 110
- kiwi.filesystem.xfs (module), 111
- kiwi.firmware (module), 200
- kiwi.help (module), 201
- kiwi.iso_tools (module), 115
- kiwi.iso_tools.base (module), 111
- kiwi.iso_tools.cdrttools (module), 112
- kiwi.iso_tools.iso (module), 113
- kiwi.kiwi (module), 201
- kiwi.logger (module), 202
- kiwi.mount_manager (module), 205
- kiwi.package_manager (module), 122
- kiwi.package_manager.base (module), 115
- kiwi.package_manager.yum (module), 117
- kiwi.package_manager.zypper (module), 119
- kiwi.partitionner (module), 125
- kiwi.partitionner.base (module), 122
- kiwi.partitionner.dasd (module), 123
- kiwi.partitionner.gpt (module), 124
- kiwi.partitionner.msdos (module), 125
- kiwi.path (module), 206
- kiwi.privileges (module), 207
- kiwi.repository (module), 132
- kiwi.repository.base (module), 126
- kiwi.repository.template (module), 126
- kiwi.repository.template.apt (module), 126
- kiwi.repository.yum (module), 128
- kiwi.repository.zypper (module), 130
- kiwi.runtime_checker (module), 207
- kiwi.runtime_config (module), 209
- kiwi.solver (module), 163
- kiwi.solver.repository (module), 162
- kiwi.solver.repository.base (module), 161
- kiwi.solver.repository.rpm_dir (module), 162
- kiwi.solver.repository.rpm_md (module), 161
- kiwi.solver.repository.suse (module), 162
- kiwi.solver.sat (module), 162
- kiwi.storage (module), 146
- kiwi.storage.device_provider (module), 139
- kiwi.storage.disk (module), 140
- kiwi.storage.loop_device (module), 142
- kiwi.storage.luks_device (module), 143
- kiwi.storage.mapped_device (module), 144
- kiwi.storage.raid_device (module), 144
- kiwi.storage.setup (module), 145
- kiwi.storage.subformat (module), 139
- kiwi.storage.subformat.base (module), 133
- kiwi.storage.subformat.gce (module), 135
- kiwi.storage.subformat.ova (module), 135
- kiwi.storage.subformat.qcow2 (module), 136
- kiwi.storage.subformat.template (module), 133
- kiwi.storage.subformat.template.vmware_settings (module), 132
- kiwi.storage.subformat.vagrant_libvirt (module), 136
- kiwi.storage.subformat.vdi (module), 137
- kiwi.storage.subformat.vhd (module), 137
- kiwi.storage.subformat.vhdfixed (module), 138
- kiwi.storage.subformat.vhdx (module), 138
- kiwi.storage.subformat.vmdk (module), 139
- kiwi.system (module), 160
- kiwi.system.identifier (module), 146
- kiwi.system.kernel (module), 147
- kiwi.system.prepare (module), 148
- kiwi.system.profile (module), 150
- kiwi.system.result (module), 150
- kiwi.system.root_bind (module), 152
- kiwi.system.root_init (module), 153
- kiwi.system.setup (module), 153
- kiwi.system.shell (module), 156
- kiwi.system.size (module), 157
- kiwi.system.uri (module), 158
- kiwi.system.users (module), 159
- kiwi.tasks (module), 166

- [kiwi.tasks.base \(module\), 163](#)
- [kiwi.tasks.result_bundle \(module\), 164](#)
- [kiwi.tasks.result_list \(module\), 164](#)
- [kiwi.tasks.system_build \(module\), 165](#)
- [kiwi.tasks.system_create \(module\), 165](#)
- [kiwi.tasks.system_prepare \(module\), 165](#)
- [kiwi.tasks.system_update \(module\), 166](#)
- [kiwi.utils \(module\), 169](#)
- [kiwi.utils.block \(module\), 166](#)
- [kiwi.utils.checksum \(module\), 167](#)
- [kiwi.utils.compress \(module\), 167](#)
- [kiwi.utils.sync \(module\), 168](#)
- [kiwi.utils.sysconfig \(module\), 169](#)
- [kiwi.version \(module\), 211](#)
- [kiwi.volume_manager \(module\), 174](#)
- [kiwi.volume_manager.base \(module\), 169](#)
- [kiwi.volume_manager.btrfs \(module\), 172](#)
- [kiwi.volume_manager.lvm \(module\), 173](#)
- [kiwi.xml_description \(module\), 211](#)
- [kiwi.xml_state \(module\), 212](#)
- [KiwiArchiveSetupError, 189](#)
- [KiwiArchiveTarError, 189](#)
- [KiwiBootImageDumpError, 189](#)
- [KiwiBootImageSetupError, 189](#)
- [KiwiBootLoaderConfigSetupError, 190](#)
- [KiwiBootLoaderGrubDataError, 190](#)
- [KiwiBootLoaderGrubFontError, 190](#)
- [KiwiBootLoaderGrubInstallError, 190](#)
- [KiwiBootLoaderGrubModulesError, 190](#)
- [KiwiBootLoaderGrubPlatformError, 190](#)
- [KiwiBootLoaderGrubSecureBootError, 190](#)
- [KiwiBootLoaderInstallSetupError, 190](#)
- [KiwiBootLoaderIsoLinuxPlatformError, 190](#)
- [KiwiBootLoaderTargetError, 190](#)
- [KiwiBootLoaderZiplInstallError, 190](#)
- [KiwiBootLoaderZiplPlatformError, 190](#)
- [KiwiBootLoaderZiplSetupError, 191](#)
- [KiwiBootStrapPhaseFailed, 191](#)
- [KiwiBundleError, 191](#)
- [KiwiCommandCapabilitiesError, 191](#)
- [KiwiCommandError, 191](#)
- [KiwiCommandNotFound, 191](#)
- [KiwiCommandNotLoaded, 191](#)
- [KiwiCompatError, 191](#)
- [KiwiCompressionFormatUnknown, 191](#)
- [KiwiConfigFileNotFound, 191](#)
- [KiwiContainerBuilderError, 191](#)
- [KiwiContainerImageSetupError, 192](#)
- [KiwiContainerSetupError, 192](#)
- [KiwiDataStructureError, 192](#)
- [KiwiDebootstrapError, 192](#)
- [KiwiDecodingError, 192](#)
- [KiwiDescriptionConflict, 192](#)
- [KiwiDescriptionInvalid, 192](#)
- [KiwiDeviceProviderError, 192](#)
- [KiwiDiskBootImageError, 192](#)
- [KiwiDiskFormatSetupError, 192](#)
- [KiwiDiskGeometryError, 193](#)
- [KiwiDistributionNameError, 193](#)
- [KiwiError, 193](#)
- [KiwiExtensionError, 193](#)
- [KiwiFileNotFound, 193](#)
- [KiwiFileSystemSetupError, 193](#)
- [KiwiFileSystemSyncError, 193](#)
- [KiwiFormatSetupError, 193](#)
- [KiwiHelpNoCommandGiven, 193](#)
- [KiwiImageResizeError, 194](#)
- [KiwiImportDescriptionError, 194](#)
- [KiwiInstallBootImageError, 194](#)
- [KiwiInstallMediaError, 194](#)
- [KiwiInstallPhaseFailed, 194](#)
- [KiwiIsoLoaderError, 194](#)
- [KiwiIsoMetaDataError, 194](#)
- [KiwiIsoToolError, 194](#)
- [KiwiKernelLookupError, 194](#)
- [KiwiLiveBootImageError, 194](#)
- [KiwiLoadCommandUndefined, 194](#)
- [KiwiLogFileSetupFailed, 195](#)
- [KiwiLoopSetupError, 195](#)
- [KiwiLuksSetupError, 195](#)
- [KiwiMappedDeviceError, 195](#)
- [KiwiMountKernelFileSystemsError, 195](#)
- [KiwiMountSharedDirectoryError, 195](#)
- [KiwiNotImplementedError, 195](#)
- [KiwiPackageManagerSetupError, 195](#)
- [KiwiPackagesDeletePhaseFailed, 195](#)
- [KiwiPartitionerGptFlagError, 195](#)
- [KiwiPartitionerMsDosFlagError, 195](#)
- [KiwiPartitionerSetupError, 196](#)
- [KiwiPrivilegesError, 196](#)
- [KiwiProfileNotFound, 196](#)
- [KiwiPxeBootImageError, 196](#)
- [KiwiRaidSetupError, 196](#)
- [KiwiRepositorySetupError, 196](#)
- [KiwiRepoTypeUnknown, 196](#)
- [KiwiRequestedTypeError, 196](#)

[KiwiRequestError](#), 196
[KiwiResizeRawDiskError](#), 196
[KiwiResultError](#), 197
[KiwiRootDirExists](#), 197
[KiwiRootImportError](#), 197
[KiwiRootInitCreationError](#), 197
[KiwiRpmDatabaseReloadError](#), 197
[KiwiRpmDirNotRemoteError](#), 197
[KiwiRuntimeConfigFormatError](#), 197
[KiwiRuntimeError](#), 197
[KiwiSatSolverJobError](#), 197
[KiwiSatSolverJobProblems](#), 198
[KiwiSatSolverPluginError](#), 198
[KiwiSchemaImportError](#), 198
[KiwiScriptFailed](#), 198
[KiwiSetupIntermediateConfigError](#), 198
[KiwiSizeError](#), 198
[KiwiSolverRepositorySetupError](#), 198
[KiwiSystemDeletePackagesFailed](#), 198
[KiwiSystemInstallPackagesFailed](#), 198
[KiwiSystemUpdateFailed](#), 198
[KiwiTargetDirectoryNotFound](#), 198
[KiwiTemplateError](#), 199
[KiwiTypeNotFound](#), 199
[KiwiUnknownServiceName](#), 199
[KiwiUriOpenError](#), 199
[KiwiUriStyleUnknown](#), 199
[KiwiUriTypeUnknown](#), 199
[KiwiValidationError](#), 199
[KiwiVhdTagError](#), 199
[KiwiVolumeGroupConflict](#), 199
[KiwiVolumeManagerSetupError](#), 199
[KiwiVolumeRootIDError](#), 200

L

[legacy_bios_mode\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.firmware.FirmWare method), 201
[list_iso\(\)](#) (kiwi.iso_tools.base.IsoToolsBase method), 112
[list_iso\(\)](#) (kiwi.iso_tools.cdrtools.IsoToolsCdrTools method), 113
[LiveImageBuilder](#) (class in kiwi.builder.live), 101
[load\(\)](#) (kiwi.system.result.Result class method), 151
[load\(\)](#) (kiwi.xml_description.XMLDescription method), 211
[load_boot_xml_description\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.boot.image.base.BootImageBase method), 79
[load_command\(\)](#) (kiwi.cli.Cli method), 176
[load_xml_description\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.tasks.base.CliTask method), 163
[Logger](#) (class in kiwi.logger), 204
[LoggerSchedulerFilter](#) (class in kiwi.logger), 204
[LoopDevice](#) (class in kiwi.storage.loop_device), 142
[LuksDevice](#) (class in kiwi.storage.luks_device), 143

M

[main\(\)](#) (in module kiwi.kiwi), 202
[map_partitions\(\)](#) (kiwi.storage.disk.Disk method), 142
[MappedDevice](#) (class in kiwi.storage.mapped_device), 144
[match_package_deleted\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.package_manager.base.PackageManagerBase method), 116
[match_package_deleted\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.package_manager.yum.PackageManagerYum method), 118
[match_package_deleted\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.package_manager.zypper.PackageManagerZyp method), 120
[match_package_installed\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.package_manager.base.PackageManagerBase method), 116
[match_package_installed\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.package_manager.yum.PackageManagerYum method), 118
[match_package_installed\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.package_manager.zypper.PackageManagerZyp method), 120
[matches\(\)](#) (kiwi.utils.checksum.Checksum method), 167
[md5\(\)](#) (kiwi.utils.checksum.Checksum method), 167
[mount\(\)](#) (kiwi.mount_manager.MountManager method), 205
[mount_kernel_file_systems\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.system.root_bind.RootBind method), 152

[mount_shared_directory\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.system.root_bind.RootBind method), [152](#)

[mount_volumes\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.volume_manager.base.VolumeManagerBase method), [171](#)

[mount_volumes\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.volume_manager.btrfs.VolumeManagerBtrfs method), [172](#)

[mount_volumes\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.volume_manager.lvm.VolumeManagerLvm method), [174](#)

[MountManager](#) (class in kiwi.mount_manager), [205](#)

[move_to_root\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.system.root_bind.RootBind method), [152](#)

N

[need_boot_partition\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.storage.setup.DiskSetup method), [146](#)

O

[ofw_mode\(\)](#) (kiwi.firmware.FirmWare method), [201](#)

[opal_mode\(\)](#) (kiwi.firmware.FirmWare method), [201](#)

P

[pack_image_to_file\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.container.docker.ContainerImageDocker method), [104](#)

[pack_image_to_file\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.container.oci.ContainerImageOCI method), [105](#)

[package_matches_host_architecture\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), [223](#)

[PackageManager](#) (class in kiwi.package_manager), [122](#)

[PackageManagerBase](#) (class in kiwi.package_manager.base), [115](#)

[PackageManagerTemplateAptGet](#) (class in kiwi.repository.template.apt), [126](#)

[PackageManagerYum](#) (class in kiwi.package_manager.yum), [117](#)

[PackageManagerZypper](#) (class in kiwi.package_manager.zypper), [119](#)

[Partitioner](#) (class in kiwi.partition), [125](#)

[PartitionerBase](#) (class in kiwi.partition.base), [122](#)

[PartitionerDasd](#) (class in kiwi.partition.dasd), [123](#)

[PartitionerGpt](#) (class in kiwi.partition.gpt), [124](#)

[PartitionerMsDos](#) (class in kiwi.partition.msdos), [125](#)

[PathLvm](#) (class in kiwi.path), [206](#)

[pinch_system\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.system.prepare.SystemPrepare method), [149](#)

[poll\(\)](#) (kiwi.command_process.CommandProcess method), [178](#)

[poll_and_watch\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.command_process.CommandProcess method), [178](#)

[poll_show_progress\(\)](#)
 (kiwi.command_process.CommandProcess method), [178](#)

[post_init\(\)](#) (kiwi.boot.image.base.BootImageBase method), [80](#)

[post_init\(\)](#) (kiwi.boot.image.builtin_kiwi.BootImageKiwi method), [81](#)

[post_init\(\)](#) (kiwi.boot.image.dracut.BootImageDracut method), [80](#)

[post_init\(\)](#) (kiwi.bootloader.config.base.BootLoaderConfigBase method), [84](#)

[post_init\(\)](#) (kiwi.bootloader.config.grub2.BootLoaderConfigGrub2 method), [86](#)

[post_init\(\)](#) (kiwi.bootloader.config.isolinux.BootLoaderConfigIsolinux method), [88](#)

[post_init\(\)](#) (kiwi.bootloader.config.zipl.BootLoaderConfigZipl method), [89](#)

[post_init\(\)](#) (kiwi.bootloader.install.base.BootLoaderInstallBase method), [91](#)

[post_init\(\)](#) (kiwi.bootloader.install.grub2.BootLoaderInstallGrub2 method), [92](#)

[post_init\(\)](#) (kiwi.bootloader.install.zipl.BootLoaderInstallZipl method), [92](#)

[post_init\(\)](#) (kiwi.container.setup.base.ContainerSetupBase method), [103](#)

[post_init\(\)](#) (kiwi.filesystem.base.FileSystemBase method), [106](#)

[post_init\(\)](#) (kiwi.filesystem.clicfs.FileSystemClicFs method), [108](#)

[post_init\(\) \(kiwi.package_manager.base.PackageManagerBase method\), 116](#)
[post_init\(\) \(kiwi.package_manager.yum.PackageManagerYum method\), 118](#)
[post_init\(\) \(kiwi.package_manager.zypper.PackageManagerZypper method\), 120](#)
[post_init\(\) \(kiwi.partitioner.base.PartitionerBasePrivileges \(class in kiwi.privileges\) method\), 123](#)
[post_init\(\) \(kiwi.partitioner.dasd.PartitionerDasd method\), 124](#)
[post_init\(\) \(kiwi.partitioner.gpt.PartitionerGpt method\), 124](#)
[post_init\(\) \(kiwi.partitioner.msdos.PartitionerMsDos method\), 125](#)
[post_init\(\) \(kiwi.repository.base.RepositoryBase method\), 128](#)
[post_init\(\) \(kiwi.repository.yum.RepositoryYum method\), 129](#)
[post_init\(\) \(kiwi.repository.zypper.RepositoryZypper method\), 131](#)
[post_init\(\) \(kiwi.storage.subformat.base.DiskFormatBase method\), 134](#)
[post_init\(\) \(kiwi.storage.subformat.gce.DiskFormatGce method\), 135](#)
[post_init\(\) \(kiwi.storage.subformat.ova.DiskFormatOva method\), 135](#)
[post_init\(\) \(kiwi.storage.subformat.qcow2.DiskFormatQcow2 method\), 136](#)
[post_init\(\) \(kiwi.storage.subformat.vagrant_libvirt.DiskFormatVagrantLibvirt method\), 136](#)
[post_init\(\) \(kiwi.storage.subformat.vdi.DiskFormatVdi method\), 137](#)
[post_init\(\) \(kiwi.storage.subformat.vhd.DiskFormatVhd method\), 137](#)
[post_init\(\) \(kiwi.storage.subformat.vhdfixed.DiskFormatVhdfixed method\), 138](#)
[post_init\(\) \(kiwi.storage.subformat.vhdx.DiskFormatVhdx method\), 138](#)
[post_init\(\) \(kiwi.storage.subformat.vmdk.DiskFormatVmdk method\), 139](#)
[post_init\(\) \(kiwi.volume_manager.base.VolumeManagerBase method\), 171](#)
[post_init\(\) \(kiwi.volume_manager.btrfs.VolumeManagerBtrfs method\), 172](#)
[post_init\(\) \(kiwi.volume_manager.lvm.VolumeManagerLvm method\), 174](#)
[prepare\(\) \(kiwi.boot.image.base.BootImageBase process_only_required\(\) method\), 80](#)
[process\(\) \(kiwi.tasks.result_bundle.ResultBundleTask method\), 164](#)
[process\(\) \(kiwi.tasks.result_list.ResultListTask method\), 164](#)
[process\(\) \(kiwi.tasks.system_build.SystemBuildTask method\), 165](#)
[process\(\) \(kiwi.tasks.system_create.SystemCreateTask method\), 165](#)
[process\(\) \(kiwi.tasks.system_prepare.SystemPrepareTask method\), 165](#)
[process\(\) \(kiwi.tasks.system_update.SystemUpdateTask method\), 166](#)
[process_delete_requests\(\) \(kiwi.package_manager.base.PackageManagerBase method\), 116](#)
[process_delete_requests\(\) \(kiwi.package_manager.yum.PackageManagerYum method\), 118](#)
[process_delete_requests\(\) \(kiwi.package_manager.zypper.PackageManagerZypper method\), 121](#)
[process_install_requests\(\) \(kiwi.package_manager.base.PackageManagerBase method\), 116](#)
[process_install_requests_bootstrap\(\) \(kiwi.package_manager.yum.PackageManagerYum method\), 119](#)
[process_install_requests_bootstrap\(\) \(kiwi.package_manager.zypper.PackageManagerZypper method\), 121](#)

method), 116
 process_only_required() (kiwi.package_manager.yum.PackageManagerYum method), 119
 process_only_required() (kiwi.package_manager.zypper.PackageManagerZypper method), 121
 process_plus_recommended() (kiwi.package_manager.base.PackageManagerBase method), 116
 process_plus_recommended() (kiwi.package_manager.yum.PackageManagerYum method), 119
 process_plus_recommended() (kiwi.package_manager.zypper.PackageManagerZypper method), 121
 Profile (class in kiwi.system.profile), 150
 profile_matches_host_architecture() (kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method), 223
 progress() (kiwi.logger.Logger method), 204
 project_file() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method), 189
 PxeBuilder (class in kiwi.builder.pxe), 101

Q

quadruple_token() (kiwi.tasks.base.CliTask method), 164
 quote() (kiwi.system.shell.Shell class method), 156
 quote_key_value_file() (kiwi.system.shell.Shell class method), 157
 quote_title() (kiwi.bootloader.config.base.BootLoaderConfigBase method), 84

R

RaidDevice (class in kiwi.storage.raid_device), 144
 relocate_boot_catalog() (kiwi.iso_tools.iso.Iso class method), 114
 remove() (kiwi.path.Path class method), 206
 remove_hierarchy() (kiwi.path.Path class method), 206
 Repository (class in kiwi.repository), 132
 RepositoryBase (class in kiwi.repository.base), 126
 RepositoryYum (class in kiwi.repository.yum), 128
 RepositoryYumSpaceRemover (class in kiwi.repository.yum), 129
 RepositoryZypper (class in kiwi.repository.zypper), 130
 request_collection() (kiwi.package_manager.base.PackageManagerBase method), 116
 request_collection() (kiwi.package_manager.yum.PackageManagerYum method), 119
 request_collection() (kiwi.package_manager.zypper.PackageManagerZypper method), 121
 request_package() (kiwi.package_manager.base.PackageManagerBase method), 117
 request_package() (kiwi.package_manager.yum.PackageManagerYum method), 119
 request_package() (kiwi.package_manager.zypper.PackageManagerZypper method), 121
 request_package_exclusion() (kiwi.package_manager.base.PackageManagerBase method), 117
 request_package_exclusion() (kiwi.package_manager.yum.PackageManagerYum method), 119
 request_package_exclusion() (kiwi.package_manager.zypper.PackageManagerZypper method), 121
 request_raw_disk_lock() (kiwi.package_manager.base.PackageManagerBase method), 117
 request_product() (kiwi.package_manager.base.PackageManagerBase method), 117
 request_product() (kiwi.package_manager.yum.PackageManagerYum method), 119
 request_product() (kiwi.package_manager.zypper.PackageManagerZypper method), 121
 resize_raw_disk() (kiwi.storage.subformat.base.DiskFormatBase method), 134

[resize_table\(\) \(kiwi.partitionner.base.PartitionerBase method\), 123](#)
[resize_table\(\) \(kiwi.partitionner.dasd.PartitionerDasd method\), 124](#)
[resize_table\(\) \(kiwi.partitionner.gpt.PartitionerGpt method\), 125](#)
[resize_table\(\) \(kiwi.partitionner.msdos.PartitionerMsDos method\), 125](#)
[Result \(class in kiwi.system.result\), 150](#)
[result_file_type \(class in kiwi.system.result\), 151](#)
[ResultBundleTask \(class in kiwi.tasks.result_bundle\), 164](#)
[ResultListTask \(class in kiwi.tasks.result_list\), 164](#)
[RootBind \(class in kiwi.system.root_bind\), 152](#)
[RootInit \(class in kiwi.system.root_init\), 153](#)
[run\(\) \(kiwi.command.Command class method\), 177](#)
[run_common_function\(\) \(kiwi.system.shell.Shell class method\), 157](#)
[runtime_config\(\) \(kiwi.repository.base.RepositoryBase method\), 128](#)
[runtime_config\(\) \(kiwi.repository.yum.RepositoryYum method\), 129](#)
[runtime_config\(\) \(kiwi.repository.zypper.RepositoryZypper method\), 132](#)
[RuntimeChecker \(class in kiwi.runtime_checker\), 207](#)
[RuntimeConfig \(class in kiwi.runtime_config\), 209](#)

S

[Sat \(class in kiwi.solver.sat\), 162](#)
[set_color_format\(\) \(kiwi.logger.Logger method\), 204](#)
[set_container_config_tag\(\) \(kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method\), 223](#)
[set_derived_from_image_uri\(\) \(kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method\), 223](#)
[set_flag\(\) \(kiwi.partitionner.base.PartitionerBase method\), 123](#)
[set_flag\(\) \(kiwi.partitionner.gpt.PartitionerGpt method\), 124](#)
[set_flag\(\) \(kiwi.partitionner.msdos.PartitionerMsDos method\), 125](#)
[set_hybrid_mbr\(\) \(kiwi.partitionner.base.PartitionerBase method\), 123](#)
[set_hybrid_mbr\(\) \(kiwi.partitionner.gpt.PartitionerGpt method\), 124](#)
[set_logfile\(\) \(kiwi.logger.Logger method\), 204](#)
[set_mbr\(\) \(kiwi.partitionner.base.PartitionerBase method\), 123](#)
[set_mbr\(\) \(kiwi.partitionner.gpt.PartitionerGpt method\), 125](#)
[set_media_tag\(\) \(kiwi.iso_tools.iso.Iso class method\), 114](#)
[set_property_readonly_root\(\) \(kiwi.volume_manager.base.VolumeManagerBase method\), 171](#)
[set_property_readonly_root\(\) \(kiwi.volume_manager.btrfs.VolumeManagerBtrfs method\), 172](#)
[set_python_default_encoding_to_utf8\(\) \(kiwi.defaults.Defaults class method\), 189](#)
[set_repository\(\) \(kiwi.xml_state.XMLState method\), 224](#)
[set_selinux_file_contexts\(\) \(kiwi.system.setup.SystemSetup method\), 156](#)
[setLogLevel\(\) \(kiwi.logger.Logger method\), 204](#)
[setup\(\) \(kiwi.container.setup.base.ContainerSetupBase method\), 103](#)
[setup\(\) \(kiwi.volume_manager.base.VolumeManagerBase method\), 171](#)
[setup\(\) \(kiwi.volume_manager.btrfs.VolumeManagerBtrfs method\), 173](#)
[setup\(\) \(kiwi.volume_manager.lvm.VolumeManagerLVM method\), 174](#)
[setup_disk_boot_images\(\) \(kiwi.bootloader.config.base.BootLoaderConfigBase method\), 85](#)
[setup_disk_boot_images\(\) \(kiwi.bootloader.config.grub2.BootLoaderConfigGrub2 method\), 85](#)

method), 86	method), 86
setup_disk_boot_images() (kiwi.bootloader.config.zipl.BootLoaderConfigZipl method), 89	setup_live_boot_images() (kiwi.bootloader.config.grub2.BootLoaderConfigGrub2 method), 87
setup_disk_image_config() (kiwi.bootloader.config.base.BootLoaderConfigBase method), 85	setup_live_boot_images() (kiwi.bootloader.config.isolinux.BootLoaderConfigIsolinux method), 89
setup_disk_image_config() (kiwi.bootloader.config.grub2.BootLoaderConfigGrub2 method), 87	setup_live_image_config() (kiwi.bootloader.config.base.BootLoaderConfigBase method), 86
setup_disk_image_config() (kiwi.bootloader.config.zipl.BootLoaderConfigZipl method), 90	setup_live_image_config() (kiwi.bootloader.config.grub2.BootLoaderConfigGrub2 method), 87
setup_groups() (kiwi.system.setup.SystemSetup method), 156	setup_live_image_config() (kiwi.bootloader.config.isolinux.BootLoaderConfigIsolinux method), 89
setup_home_for_user() (kiwi.system.users.Users method), 160	setup_locale() (kiwi.system.setup.SystemSetup method), 156
setup_install_boot_images() (kiwi.bootloader.config.base.BootLoaderConfigBase method), 85	setup_machine_id() (kiwi.system.setup.SystemSetup method), 156
setup_install_boot_images() (kiwi.bootloader.config.grub2.BootLoaderConfigGrub2 method), 87	setup_mountpoint() (kiwi.volume_manager.base.VolumeManagerBase method), 171
setup_install_boot_images() (kiwi.bootloader.config.isolinux.BootLoaderConfigIsolinux method), 88	setup_plymouth_splash() (kiwi.system.setup.SystemSetup method), 156
setup_install_image_config() (kiwi.bootloader.config.base.BootLoaderConfigBase method), 85	setup_repositories() (kiwi.system.prepare.SystemPrepare method), 149
setup_install_image_config() (kiwi.bootloader.config.grub2.BootLoaderConfigGrub2 method), 87	setup_root_console() (kiwi.container.setup.base.ContainerSetupBase method), 103
setup_install_image_config() (kiwi.bootloader.config.isolinux.BootLoaderConfigIsolinux method), 88	setup_static_device_nodes() (kiwi.container.setup.base.ContainerSetupBase method), 103
setup_intermediate_config() (kiwi.system.root_bind.RootBind method), 152	setup_sysconfig_bootloader() (kiwi.bootloader.config.base.BootLoaderConfigBase method), 86
setup_isolinux_boot_path() (kiwi.iso_tools.iso.Iso method), 115	setup_sysconfig_bootloader() (kiwi.bootloader.config.grub2.BootLoaderConfigGrub2 method), 88
setup_keyboard_map() (kiwi.system.setup.SystemSetup method), 156	setup_timezone() (kiwi.system.setup.SystemSetup method), 156
setup_live_boot_images() (kiwi.bootloader.config.base.BootLoaderConfigBase method), 85	setup_users() (kiwi.system.setup.SystemSetup method), 156
	setup_users() (kiwi.tasks.base.CliTask method), 156

method), 164

sha256() (kiwi.utils.checksum.Checksum method), 167

shasum (kiwi.system.result.result_file_type attribute), 151

Shell (class in kiwi.system.shell), 156

show() (kiwi.help.Help method), 201

show_and_exit_on_help_request() (kiwi.cli.Cli method), 176

solve() (kiwi.solver.sat.Sat method), 162

SolverRepository (class in kiwi.solver.repository), 162

SolverRepositoryBase (class in kiwi.solver.repository.base), 161

SolverRepositoryRpmDir (class in kiwi.solver.repository.rpm_dir), 162

SolverRepositoryRpmMd (class in kiwi.solver.repository.rpm_md), 161

SolverRepositorySUSE (class in kiwi.solver.repository.suse), 162

sort_by_hierarchy() (kiwi.path.Path class method), 206

store_to_result() (kiwi.storage.subformat.base.DiskFormatBase method), 134

store_to_result() (kiwi.storage.subformat.ova.DiskFormatOva method), 135

store_to_result() (kiwi.storage.subformat.vhdfixed.DiskFormatVhdfixed method), 138

store_to_result() (kiwi.storage.subformat.vmdk.DiskFormatVmdk method), 139

sync_data() (kiwi.filesystem.base.FileSystemBase method), 107

sync_data() (kiwi.utils.sync.DataSync method), 168

sync_data() (kiwi.volume_manager.base.VolumeManagerBase method), 171

sync_data() (kiwi.volume_manager.btrfs.VolumeManagerBtrfs method), 173

SysConfig (class in kiwi.utils.sysconfig), 169

SystemBuildTask (class in kiwi.tasks.system_build), 165

SystemCreateTask (class in kiwi.tasks.system_create), 165

SystemIdentifier (class in kiwi.system.identifier), 146

SystemPrepare (class in kiwi.system.prepare), 148

SystemPrepareTask (class in kiwi.tasks.system_prepare), 165

SystemSetup (class in kiwi.system.setup), 153

SystemSize (class in kiwi.system.size), 157

SystemUpdateTask (class in kiwi.tasks.system_update), 166

T

target_supports_extended_attributes() (kiwi.utils.sync.DataSync method), 169

timestamp() (kiwi.solver.repository.base.SolverRepositoryBase method), 161

timestamp() (kiwi.solver.repository.rpm_md.SolverRepository method), 162

to_profile() (kiwi.defaults.Defaults method), 189

translate() (kiwi.system.uri.Uri method), 159

U

unmount_base() (kiwi.mount_manager.MountManager method), 206

unmount_lazy() (kiwi.mount_manager.MountManager method), 206

unmount_volumes() (kiwi.volume_manager.base.VolumeManagerBase method), 171

unmount_volumes() (kiwi.volume_manager.btrfs.VolumeManagerBtrfs method), 173

unmount_volumes() (kiwi.volume_manager.lvm.VolumeManagerLVM method), 174

uncompress() (kiwi.utils.compress.Compress method), 168

update() (kiwi.package_manager.base.PackageManagerBase method), 117

update() (kiwi.package_manager.yum.PackageManagerYum method), 119

update() (kiwi.package_manager.zypper.PackageManagerZypper method), 121

update_system()

(kiwi.system.prepare.SystemPrepare method), [149](#)
 Uri (class in kiwi.system.uri), [158](#)
 usage() (in module kiwi.kiwi), [202](#)
 use_default_location()
 (kiwi.repository.base.RepositoryBase method), [128](#)
 use_default_location()
 (kiwi.repository.yum.RepositoryYum method), [129](#)
 use_default_location()
 (kiwi.repository.zypper.RepositoryZypper method), [132](#)
 use_for_bundle
 (kiwi.system.result.result_file_type attribute), [151](#)
 user_add() (kiwi.system.users.Users method), [160](#)
 user_exists() (kiwi.system.users.Users method), [160](#)
 user_modify() (kiwi.system.users.Users method), [160](#)
 Users (class in kiwi.system.users), [159](#)

V

verify_image_size()
 (kiwi.system.result.Result method), [151](#)
 VmwareSettingsTemplate (class in kiwi.storage.subformat.template.vmware_settings), [132](#)
 VolumeManager (class in kiwi.volume_manager), [174](#)
 VolumeManagerBase (class in kiwi.volume_manager.base), [169](#)
 VolumeManagerBtrfs (class in kiwi.volume_manager.btrfs), [172](#)
 VolumeManagerLVM (class in kiwi.volume_manager.lvm), [173](#)

W

WarningFilter (class in kiwi.logger), [205](#)
 which() (kiwi.path.Path class method), [206](#)
 wipe() (kiwi.path.Path class method), [207](#)
 wipe() (kiwi.storage.disk.Disk method), [142](#)
 write() (kiwi.bootloader.config.base.BootLoaderConfigBase method), [86](#)

write() (kiwi.bootloader.config.grub2.BootLoaderConfigGrub2 method), [88](#)
 write() (kiwi.bootloader.config.isolinux.BootLoaderConfigIsolinux method), [89](#)
 write() (kiwi.bootloader.config.zipl.BootLoaderConfigZipl method), [90](#)
 write() (kiwi.repository.yum.RepositoryYumSpaceRemover method), [130](#)
 write() (kiwi.system.identifier.SystemIdentifier method), [147](#)
 write() (kiwi.utils.sysconfig.SysConfig method), [169](#)
 write_to_disk()
 (kiwi.system.identifier.SystemIdentifier method), [147](#)

X

XMLDescription (class in kiwi.xml_description), [211](#)
 XMLState (class in kiwi.xml_state), [212](#)
 xz() (kiwi.utils.compress.Compress method), [168](#)